

PLANTS MODIFIED WITH MINI-CHROMOSOMES

## RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application claims priority to U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/547,256 filed February 23, 2004, which is incorporated by reference herein in its entirety.

## BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Two general approaches are used for introduction of new genetic information ("transformation") into cells. One approach is to introduce the new genetic information as part of another DNA molecule, referred to as an "episomal vector," or "mini-chromosome", which can be maintained as an independent unit (an episome) apart from the host chromosomal DNA molecule(s). Episomal vectors contain all the necessary DNA sequence elements required for DNA replication and maintenance of the vector within the cell. Many episomal vectors are available for use in bacterial cells (for example, see Maniatis et al., "Molecular Cloning : a Laboratory Manual, "Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Sprint Harbor, NY.. 1982.). However, only a few episomal vectors that function in higher eukaryotic cells have been developed. Higher eukaryotic episomal vectors were primarily based on naturally occurring viruses. In higher plant systems gemini viruses are double-stranded DNA viruses that replicate through a double-stranded intermediate upon which an episomal vector could be based, although the gemini virus is limited to an approximately 800 bp insert. Although an episomal plant vector based on the Cauliflower Mosaic Virus has been developed, its capacity to carry new genetic information also is limited (Brisson et al., Nature, 310 :511,1984).

The other general method of genetic transformation involves integration of introduced DNA sequences into the recipient cell's chromosomes, permitting the new information to be replicated and partitioned to the cell's progeny as a part of the natural chromosomes. The introduced DNA usually is broken and joined together in various combinations before it is integrated at random sites into the cell's chromosome (see, for example Wigler *et al.*, Cell, 11:223, 1977). Common problems with this procedure are the rearrangement of introduced DNA sequences and unpredictable levels of expression due to the location of the transgene in the genome or so called "position effect variegation" (Shingo *et al.*, Mol. Cell. Biol., 6:1787,

1986). Further, unlike episomal DNA, integrated DNA cannot normally be precisely removed. A more refined form of integrative transformation can be achieved by exploiting naturally occurring viruses that integrate into the host's chromosomes as part of their life cycle, such as retroviruses (see Chepko *et al.*, Cell, 37:1053, 1984).

5                   One common genetic transformation method used in higher plants is based on the transfer of bacterial DNA into plant chromosomes that occurs during infection by the phytopathogenic soil bacterium *Agrobacterium* (see Nester *et al.*, Ann. Rev. Plant Phys., 35:387-413, 1984). By substituting genes of interest for the naturally transferred bacterial sequences (called T-DNA), investigators  
10 have been able to introduce new DNA into plant cells. However, even this more "refined" integrative transformation system is limited in three major ways. First, DNA sequences introduced into plant cells using the *Agrobacterium* T-DNA system are frequently rearranged (see Jones *et al.*, Mol Gen. Genet., 207:478, 1987). Second, the expression of the introduced DNA sequences varies between individual  
15 transformants (see Jones *et al.*, EMBO J., 4:2411-2418, 1985). This variability is presumably caused by rearranged sequences and the influence of surrounding sequences in the plant chromosome (*i.e.*, position effects), as well as methylation of the transgene. Finally, insertion of extra elements into the genome can disrupt the genes, promoters or other genetic elements necessary for normal plant growth and  
20 function.

Another widely used technique to genetically transform plants involves the use of micro-projectile bombardment. In this process, a nucleic acid containing the desired genetic elements to be introduced into the plant is deposited on or in small metallic particles, e.g., tungsten, platinum, or preferably gold, which are then  
25 delivered at a high velocity into the plant tissue or plant cells. However, similar problems arise as with *Agrobacterium*-mediated gene transfer, and as noted above expression of the inserted DNA can be unpredictable and insertion of extra elements into the genome can disrupt and adversely impact plant processes.

One attractive alternative to commonly used methods of transformation  
30 is the use of an artificial chromosome. Artificial chromosomes are man-made linear or circular DNA molecules constructed in part from cis-acting DNA sequence elements that provide replication and partitioning of the constructed chromosomes (see Murray *et al.*, Nature, 305:189-193, 1983). Desired elements include: (1) origin

of replication, which are the sites for initiation of DNA replication, (2) centromeres (site of kinetochore assembly and responsible for proper distribution of replicated chromosomes into daughter cells at mitosis or meiosis), and (3) if the chromosome is linear, telomeres (specialized DNA structures at the ends of linear chromosomes that function to stabilize the ends and facilitate the complete replication of the extreme termini of the DNA molecule). An additional desired element is a chromatin organizing sequence. It is well documented that centromere function is crucial for stable chromosomal inheritance in almost all eukaryotic organisms (reviewed in Nicklas 1988). The centromere accomplishes this by attaching, via centromere binding proteins, to the spindle fibers during mitosis and meiosis, thus ensuring proper gene segregation during cell divisions.

The essential chromosomal elements for construction of artificial chromosomes have been precisely characterized in lower eukaryotic species, and more recently in mouse and human. Autonomous replication sequences (ARSs) have been isolated from unicellular fungi, including *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (brewer's yeast) and *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* (see Stinchcomb *et al.*, 1979 and Hsiao *et al.*, 1979). An ARS behaves like a origin of replication allowing DNA molecules that contain the ARS to be replicated in concert with the rest of the genome after introduction into the cell nuclei of these fungi. DNA molecules containing these sequences replicate, but in the absence of a centromere they are not partitioned into daughter cells in a controlled fashion that ensures efficient chromosome inheritance.

Artificial chromosomes have been constructed in yeast using the three cloned essential chromosomal elements (see Murray *et al.*, Nature, 305:189-193, 1983). None of the essential components identified in unicellular organisms, however, function in higher eukaryotic systems. For example, a yeast centromere sequence will not confer stable inheritance upon vectors transformed into higher eukaryotes.

In contrast to the detailed studies done in yeast, less is known about the molecular structure of functional centromeric DNA of higher eukaryotes.

Ultrastructural studies indicate that higher eukaryotic kinetochores, which are specialized complexes of proteins that form on the centromere during late prophase, are large structures (mammalian kinetochore plates are approximately 0.3  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter) which possess multiple microtubule attachment sites (reviewed in Rieder,

1982). It is therefore possible that the centromeric DNA regions of these organisms will be correspondingly large, although the minimal amount of DNA necessary for centromere function may be much smaller.

While the above studies have been useful in elucidating the structure and function of centromeres, it was not known whether information derived from lower eukaryotic or mammalian higher eukaryotic organisms would be applicable to plants. There exists a need for cloned centromeres from higher eukaryotic organisms, particularly plant organisms, which would represent a first step in production of artificial chromosomes. There further exists a need for plant cells, plants, seeds and progeny containing functional, stable, and autonomous artificial chromosomes capable of carrying a large number of different genes and genetic elements.

### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The invention provides for adchromosomal plants, described in further detail herein, comprising a mini-chromosome, wherein said mini-chromosome preferably has a transmission efficiency during mitotic division of at least 90%, for example, at least 95%. Additionally, these adchromosomal plants may comprise a mini-chromosome having a transmission efficiency during meiotic division of, e.g., at least 80%, at least 85%, at least 90% or at least 95%.

In one embodiment, the adchromosomal plants of the invention comprise a mini-chromosome that is 1000 kilobases or less in length. In exemplary embodiments, the adchromosomal plant comprises a mini-chromosome that is 600 kilobases or less in length or 500 kilobases or less in length.

In another embodiment, the mini-chromosome of any of the preceding adchromosomal plants of the invention comprises a site for site-specific recombination.

In an embodiment, the mini-chromosome of any of the preceding adchromosomal plants of the invention comprises a centromeric nucleic acid insert derived from a crop plant centromere. In an exemplary embodiment, the centromeric nucleic acid insert is derived from genomic DNA of a plant selected from the group consisting of *Brassica*, *Nicotiana*, *Lycopersicum*, *Glycine* or *Zea* species. In another exemplary embodiment, the centromeric nucleic acid insert is derived from genomic



DNA of a plant selected from the group consisting of broccoli, canola, tobacco, tomato, soybean or corn.

In another embodiment, the invention provides for the mini-chromosome of any one of the preceding adchromosomal plants, further comprising a centromeric nucleic acid insert that comprises artificially synthesized repeated nucleotide sequences. These artificially synthesized repeated nucleotide sequences may be derived from natural centromere sequences, combinations or fragments of natural centromere sequences including a combination of repeats of different lengths, a combination of different sequences, a combination of both different repeat lengths and different sequences, a combination of repeats from two or more plant species, a combination of different artificially synthesized sequences or a combination of natural centromere sequence(s) and artificially synthesized sequence(s).

The invention also provides for a mini-chromosome of any of the preceding adchromosomal plants of the invention, wherein the mini-chromosome is derived from a donor clone or a centromere clone and has substitutions, deletions, insertions, duplications or arrangements of one or more nucleotides in the mini-chromosome compared to the nucleotide sequence of the donor clone or centromere clone. In one embodiment, the mini-chromosome is obtained by passage of the mini-chromosome through one or more hosts. In another embodiment, the mini-chromosome is obtained by passage of the mini-chromosome through two or more different hosts. The host may be selected from the group consisting of viruses, bacteria, yeasts, plants, prokaryotic organisms, or eukaryotic organisms.

The invention also provides for a mini-chromosome of any of the preceding adchromosomal plants of the invention, wherein the mini-chromosome comprises one or more exogenous nucleic acids. In further exemplary embodiments, the mini-chromosome comprises at least two or more, at least three or more, at least four or more, at least five or more or at least ten or more exogenous nucleic acids.

In one embodiment, at least one exogenous nucleic acid of any of the preceding mini-chromosomes of a plant is operably linked to a heterologous regulatory sequence functional in plant cells. The invention provides for exogenous nucleic acids linked to a plant regulatory sequence. The invention also provides for exogenous nucleic acids linked to a non-plant regulatory sequence, such as an inset or

yeast regulatory sequence. Exemplary regulatory sequences comprise any one of SEQ ID NOS: 4 to 23 or a functional fragment or variant thereof.

In another embodiment, the mini-chromosome of any of the preceding adchromosomal plants comprises an exogenous nucleic acid that confers herbicide  
5 resistance, insect resistance, disease resistance, or stress resistance on the plant. The invention provides for mini-chromosomes comprising an exogenous nucleic acid that confers resistance to phosphinothricin or glyphosate herbicide. The invention also provides for mini-chromosomes comprising an exogenous nucleic acid that encodes a phosphinothricin acetyltransferase, glyphosate acetyltransferase or a mutant  
10 enoylpyruvylshikimate phosphate (EPSP) synthase.

The invention also provides for the mini-chromosome of any of the preceding adchromosomal plants comprising an exogenous nucleic acid that encodes a *Bacillus thuringiensis* crystal toxin gene or *Bacillus cereus* toxin gene. The invention further provides for the mini-chromosome of any of the preceding  
15 adchromosomal plants comprising an exogenous nucleic acid that confers resistance to drought, heat, chilling, freezing, excessive moisture, ultraviolet light, ionizing radiation, toxins, pollution, mechanical stress or salt stress. The invention also provides for a mini-chromosome of any of the preceding adchromosomal plants that comprises an exogenous nucleic acid that confers resistance to a virus, bacteria, fungi  
20 or nematode.

In another embodiment, the mini-chromosome of any of the preceding adchromosomal plants comprises an exogenous nucleic acid conferring herbicide resistance, an exogenous nucleic acid conferring insect resistance, and at least one additional exogenous nucleic acid.

25 The invention provides for mini-chromosomes of any of the preceding adchromosomal plants comprising an exogenous nucleic acid selected from the group consisting of a nitrogen fixation gene, a plant stress-induced gene, a nutrient utilization gene, a gene that affects plant pigmentation, a gene that encodes an antisense or ribozyme molecule, a gene encoding a secretable antigen, a toxin gene, a  
30 receptor gene, a ligand gene, a seed storage gene, a hormone gene, an enzyme gene, an interleukin gene, a clotting factor gene, a cytokine gene, an antibody gene, a growth factor gene, a transcription factor gene, a transcriptional repressor gene, a

DNA-binding protein gene, a recombination gene, a DNA replication gene, a programmed cell death gene, a kinase gene, a phosphatase gene, a G protein gene, a cyclin gene, a cell cycle control gene, a gene involved in transcription, a gene involved in translation, a gene involved in RNA processing, a gene involved in RNAi, an organellar gene, a intracellular trafficking gene, an integral membrane protein gene, a transporter gene, a membrane channel protein gene, a cell wall gene, a gene involved in protein processing, a gene involved in protein modification, a gene involved in protein degradation, a gene involved in metabolism, a gene involved in biosynthesis, a gene involved in assimilation of nitrogen or other elements or nutrients, a gene involved in controlling carbon flux, gene involved in respiration, a gene involved in photosynthesis, a gene involved in light sensing, a gene involved in organogenesis, a gene involved in embryogenesis, a gene involved in differentiation, a gene involved in meiotic drive, a gene involved in self incompatibility, a gene involved in development, a gene involved in nutrient, metabolite or mineral transport, a gene involved in nutrient, metabolite or mineral storage, a calcium-binding protein gene, or a lipid-binding protein gene.

The invention also provides for a mini-chromosome of any of the preceding adchromosomal plants comprising an exogenous enzyme gene selected from the group consisting of a gene that encodes an enzyme involved in metabolizing biochemical wastes for use in bioremediation, a gene that encodes an enzyme for modifying pathways that produce secondary plant metabolites, a gene that encodes an enzyme that produces a pharmaceutical, a gene that encodes an enzyme that improves changes the nutritional content of a plant, a gene that encodes an enzyme involved in vitamin synthesis, a gene that encodes an enzyme involved in carbohydrate, polysaccharide or starch synthesis, a gene that encodes an enzyme involved in mineral accumulation or availability, a gene that encodes a phytase, a gene that encodes an enzyme involved in fatty acid, fat or oil synthesis, a gene that encodes an enzyme involved in synthesis of chemicals or plastics, a gene that encodes an enzyme involved in synthesis of a fuel and a gene that encodes an enzyme involved in synthesis of a fragrance, a gene that encodes an enzyme involved in synthesis of a flavor, a gene that encodes an enzyme involved in synthesis of a pigment or dye, a gene that encodes an enzyme involved in synthesis of a hydrocarbon, a gene that encodes an enzyme involved in synthesis of a structural or fibrous compound, a gene

that encodes an enzyme involved in synthesis of a food additive, a gene that encodes an enzyme involved in synthesis of a chemical insecticide, a gene that encodes an enzyme involved in synthesis of an insect repellent, or a gene controlling carbon flux in a plant.

5                   In an embodiment of the invention, the mini-chromosomes of any one of the preceding adchromosomal plants comprise  $n$  copies of a repeated nucleotide sequence, wherein  $n$  is less than 1000. In other exemplary embodiments, the mini-chromosomes of the plants comprise  $n$  copies of a repeated nucleotide sequence, wherein  $n$  is at least 5, wherein  $n$  is at least 15, or wherein  $n$  is at least 50.

10                   In another embodiment of the invention, the mini-chromosomes of any of the preceding adchromosomal plants comprise a telomere.

                  The invention also provides embodiments wherein the mini-chromosome of any of the preceding adchromosomal plants is circular.

                  In one embodiment of the invention, any of the preceding  
15   adchromosomal plants are a monocotyledon. In another embodiment of the invention, any of the preceding adchromosomal plants are a dicotyledone. The invention also provides that the adchromosomal plants of the invention are, e.g., crop plants, cereal plants, vegetable crops, field crops, fruit and vine crops, wood or fiber crops or ornamental plants. The invention also provides exemplary adchromosomal plants that  
20   are *Brassica*, *Nicotiana*, *Lycopersicum*, *Glycine* or *Zea* species.

                  Another embodiment of the invention is a part of any of the preceding adchromosomal plants. Exemplary plant parts of the invention include a pod, root, cutting, tuber, stem, stalk, fruit, berry, nut, flower, leaf, bark, wood, epidermis, vascular tissue, organ, protoplast, crown, callus culture, petiole, petal, sepal, stamen,  
25   stigma, style, bud, meristem, cambium, cortex, pith, sheath, silk or embryo. Other exemplary plant parts are a meiocyte or gamete or ovule or pollen or endosperm of any of the preceding adchromosomal plants. Other exemplary plant parts are a seed, embryo or propagule of any of the preceding adchromosomal plants.

                  An embodiment of the invention is a progeny of any of the preceding  
30   adchromosomal plants of the invention. These progeny of the invention may be the result of self-breeding, cross-breeding, apomyxis or clonal propagation. In exemplary embodiments, the invention also provides for progeny that comprise a mini-

chromosome that is descended from a parental mini-chromosome that contained a centromere less than 150 kilobases in length, less than 100 kilobases in length or less than 50 kilobases in length.

In another aspect, the invention provides for methods of making a mini-chromosome for use in any of the preceding adchromosomal plants of the invention. These methods comprise identifying a centromere nucleotide sequence in a genomic DNA library using a multiplicity of diverse probes, and constructing a mini-chromosome comprising the centromere nucleotide sequence. These methods may further comprise determining hybridization scores for hybridization of the multiplicity of diverse probes to genomic clones within the genomic nucleic acid library, determining a classification for genomic clones within the genomic nucleic acid library according to the hybridization scores for at least two of the diverse probes, and selecting one or more genomic clones within one or more classifications for constructing the mini-chromosome.

In exemplary embodiments, the step of determining a classification for genomic clones within the genomic nucleic acid library may utilize the hybridization scores for at least 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29 or 30 or more different probes. A classification may comprise a pattern of high, medium or low hybridization scores to various probes.

Exemplary embodiments of probes useful in this method include a probe that hybridizes to the centromere region of a chromosome, a probe that hybridizes to satellite repeat DNA, a probe that hybridizes to retroelement DNA, a probe that hybridizes to portions of genomic DNA that are heavily methylated, a probe that hybridizes to arrays of tandem repeats in genomic DNA, a probe that hybridizes to telomere DNA or a probe that hybridizes to a pseudogene. Other exemplary probes include, a probe that hybridizes to ribosomal DNA, a probe that hybridizes to mitochondrial DNA, or a probe that hybridizes to chloroplast DNA, for which preferably a classification comprises a low hybridization score for hybridization to said probe.

Another aspect of the invention provides for methods of making any one of the preceding adchromosomal plants comprising delivering a mini-chromosome to a plant cell using a biolistic method, wherein a particle suitable for

use in biolistic method is delivered in a liquid with the mini-chromosome, and regenerating a plant from the plant cell. The liquid may further comprise a divalent ion and a di- or poly-amine. In exemplary embodiments, the liquid comprises water,  $\text{CaCl}_2$ , and spermidine, and the particles are gold particles. Suitable alternatives to spermidine are, e.g., spermine or other aliphatic or conjugated di- or poly-amines such as 1, 5-diaminopentane, 1, 6-diaminohexane, 1,7-diaminoheptane, 1,8-diaminooctane, histamine or related molecules.

A further aspect of the invention provides for methods of making any of the preceding adchromosomal plant comprising co-delivering to a plant cell a mini-chromosome and a nucleic acid encoding a growth inducing gene, wherein said nucleic acid is not part of the mini-chromosome, and regenerating a plant from the plant cell. The invention further provides for methods comprising co-delivering a nucleic acid encoding a growth inducing gene is not expressed or alternatively is not present in the regenerated plant. The invention also provides for methods wherein the co-delivered nucleic acid encodes a growth inducing gene expressed during regeneration. The growth inducing gene may a plant growth regulator gene, an organogenesis-promoting gene, an embryogenesis-promoting gene or regeneration-promoting gene, such as *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* isopentenyl transferase gene, *Agrobacterium rhizogenes* isopentenyl transferase gene, *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* indole-3-acetamide hydrolase (IAAH) gene or *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* tryptophan-2-monooxygenase (IAAM) gene.

Another aspect of the invention provides for methods of using any of the preceding adchromosomal plants for a food product, a pharmaceutical product or chemical product, according to which a suitable exogenous nucleic acid is expressed in adchromosomal plants or plant cells and the plant or plant cells are grown. The plant may secrete the product into its growth environment or the product may be contained within the plant, in which case the plant is harvested and desirable products are extracted.

Thus, the invention contemplates methods of using any of the preceding adchromosomal plants to produce a modified food product, for example, by growing a plant that expresses a exogenous nucleic acid that alters the nutritional content of the plant, and harvesting or processing the corn plant.

The invention also contemplates methods of using any of the preceding adchromosomal plants to produce a recombinant protein, by growing a plant comprising a mini-chromosome that comprises an exogenous nucleic acid encoding the recombinant protein. Optionally the plant is harvested and the desired recombinant protein is isolated from the plant. Exemplary recombinant proteins include pharmaceutical proteins or industrial enzymes.

The invention also contemplates methods of using any of the preceding adchromosomal plants to produce a recombinant protein, by growing a plant comprising a mini-chromosome that comprises an exogenous nucleic acid encoding an enzyme involved in synthesis of the chemical product. Optionally the plant is harvested and the desired chemical product is isolated from the plant. Exemplary chemical products include pharmaceutical products.

### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

Figure 1 is an example of a mini-chromosome vector in the present invention containing 2 genes;

Figure 2 is another example of a mini-chromosome vector in the present invention containing 4 genes;

Figure 3 is a mini-chromosome from which all bacterial sequences have been removed. In this embodiment, bacterial sequence present between or among the plant-expressed genes or other mini-chromosome sequences would be excised prior to removal of the remaining bacterial sequences, by cutting the mini-chromosome with endonuclease #1, and re-ligating the structure such that the antibiotic-resistance gene #1 has been lost.

Figure 4 shows various structural configurations by which mini-chromosome elements can be oriented with respect to each other.

Figure 5 shows the alignment of *Brassica* consensus centromere satellite repeats.

Figure 6 shows the alignment of *Glycine max* (soybean) consensus centromere satellite repeats.

While this invention is susceptible of embodiment in many different forms, there is shown in the drawings, and will be described herein in detail, specific embodiments thereof with the understanding that the present disclosure is to be considered as an exemplification of the principles of the invention and is not intended to limit the invention to the specific embodiments illustrated.

The invention is based on the production of modified plants, containing functional, stable, autonomous mini-chromosomes. Such mini-chromosomes have been shown herein to be meiotically transmitted to progeny.

One aspect of the invention is related to plants containing functional, stable, autonomous mini-chromosomes, preferably carrying one or more nucleic acids exogenous to the cell. Such plants carrying mini-chromosomes are contrasted to transgenic plants whose genome has been altered by chromosomal integration of an exogenous nucleic acid. Preferably, expression of the exogenous nucleic acid, either constitutively or in response to a signal which may be a challenge or a stimulus, results in an altered phenotype of the plant.

The invention provides for mini-chromosomes comprising at least 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 250, 500, 1000 or more exogenous nucleic acids.

The invention contemplates that any plants, including but not limited to monocots, dicots, gymnosperm, field crops, vegetable crops, fruit and vine crops, or any specific plants named herein, may be modified by carrying autonomous mini-chromosomes as described herein. A related aspect of the invention is plant parts or plant tissues, including pollen, silk, endosperm, ovule, seed, embryo, pods, roots, cuttings, tubers, stems, stalks, fruit, berries, nuts, flowers, leaves, bark, whole plant, plant cell, plant organ, protoplast, cell culture, or any group of plant cells organized into a structural and functional unit, any cells of which carry mini-chromosomes.

A related aspect of the invention is achromosomal plant parts or plant tissues, including pollen, silk, endosperm, ovule, seed, embryo, pods, roots, cuttings, tubers, stems, stalks, crown, callus culture, petiole, petal, sepal, stamen, stigma, style, bud, fruit, berries, nuts, flowers, leaves, bark, wood, whole plant, plant cell, plant organ, protoplast, cell culture, or any group of plant cells organized into a structural



and functional unit. In one preferred embodiment, the exogenous nucleic acid is primarily expressed in a specific location or tissue of a plant, for example, epidermis, vascular tissue, meristem, cambium, cortex, pith, leaf, sheath, flower, root or seed. Tissue-specific expression can be accomplished with, for example, localized presence  
5 of the mini-chromosome, selective maintenance of the mini-chromosome, or with promoters that drive tissue-specific expression.

Another related aspect of the invention is meiocytes, pollen, ovules, endosperm, seed, somatic embryos, apomictic embryos, embryos derived from fertilization, vegetative propagules and progeny of the originally adchromosomal  
10 plant and of its filial generations that retain the functional, stable, autonomous mini-chromosome. Such progeny include clonally propagated plants, embryos and plant parts as well as filial progeny from self- and cross-breeding, and from apomyxis.

Preferably the mini-chromosome is transmitted to subsequent generations of viable daughter cells during mitotic cell division with a transmission  
15 efficiency of at least 60%, 70%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, or 99%. More preferably, the mini-chromosome is transmitted to viable gametes during meiotic cell division with a transmission efficiency of at least 60%, 70%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, or 99% when more than one copy of the mini-chromosome is present in the gamete mother cells of the plant. Preferably, the mini-  
20 chromosome is transmitted to viable gametes during meiotic cell division with a transmission frequency of at least 20%, 30%, 40%, 45%, 46%, 47%, 48%, or 49% when one copy of the mini-chromosome is present in the gamete mother cells of the plant. For production of seeds via sexual reproduction or by apomyxis the mini-chromosome is preferably transferred into at least 60%, 70%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%,  
25 96%, 97%, 98%, or 99% of viable embryos when cells of the plant contain more than one copy of the mini-chromosome. For production of seeds via sexual reproduction or by apomyxis from plants with one mini-chromosome per cell, the mini-chromosome is preferably transferred into at least 20%, 30%, 40%, 45%, 46%, 47%, 48%, or 49% of viable embryos.

—30 Preferably, a mini-chromosome that comprises an exogenous selectable trait or exogenous selectable marker can be employed to increase the frequency in subsequent generations of adchromosomal cells, tissues, gametes, embryos, endosperm, seeds, plants or progeny. More preferably, the frequency of

transmission of mini-chromosomes into viable cells, tissues, gametes, embryos, endosperm, seeds, plants or progeny can be at least 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99% or 99.5% after mitosis or meiosis by applying a selection that favors the survival of adchromosomal cells, tissues, gametes, embryos, endosperm, seeds, plants or progeny over such cells, tissues, gametes, embryos, endosperm, seeds, plants or progeny lacking the mini-chromosome.

Transmission efficiency may be measured as the percentage of progeny cells or plants that carry the mini-chromosome as measured by one of several assays taught herein including detection of reporter gene fluorescence, PCR detection of a sequence that is carried by the mini-chromosome, RT-PCR detection of a gene transcript for a gene carried on the mini-chromosome, Western analysis of a protein produced by a gene carried on the mini-chromosome, Southern analysis of the DNA (either in total or a portion thereof) carried by the mini-chromosome, fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) or in situ localization by repressor binding, to name a few. Any assay used to detect the presence of the mini-chromosome (or a portion of the mini-chromosome) may be used to measure the efficiency of a parental cell or plant transmits the mini-chromosome to its progeny. Efficient transmission as measured by some benchmark percentage should indicate the degree to which the mini-chromosome is stable through the mitotic and meiotic cycles.

Plants of the invention may also contain chromosomally integrated exogenous nucleic acid in addition to the autonomous mini-chromosomes. The adchromosomal plants or plant parts, including plant tissues of the invention may include plants that have chromosomal integration of some portion of the mini-chromosome in some or all cells the plant. The plant, including plant tissue or plant cell is still characterized as adchromosomal despite the occurrence of some chromosomal integration. In one aspect of the invention, the autonomous mini-chromosome can be isolated from integrated exogenous nucleic acid by crossing the adchromosomal plant containing the integrated exogenous nucleic acid with plants producing some gametes lacking the integrated exogenous nucleic acid and subsequently isolating offspring of the cross, or subsequent crosses, that are adchromosomal but lack the integrated exogenous nucleic acid. This independent segregation of the mini-chromosome is one measure of the autonomous nature of the mini-chromosome.

Another aspect of the invention relates to methods for producing and isolating such adchromosomal plants containing functional, stable, autonomous mini-chromosomes.

In one embodiment, the invention contemplates improved methods for isolating native centromere sequences. In another embodiment, the invention contemplates methods for generating variants of native or artificial centromere sequences by passage through bacterial or plant or other host cells.

In a further embodiment, the invention contemplates methods for delivering the mini-chromosome into plant cells or tissues to transform the cells or tissues.

In yet another embodiment, the invention contemplates improved methods for regenerating plants, including methods for co-delivery of growth inducing genes with mini-chromosomes. The growth delivery genes include *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* or *A rhizogenes* isopentenyl transferase (IPT) genes involved in cytokinin biosynthesis, plant isopentenyl transferase (IPT) genes involved in cytokinin biosynthesis (from any plant), *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* IAAH, IAAM genes involved in auxin biosynthesis (indole-3-acetamide hydrolase and tryptophan-2-monooxygenase, respectively), *Agrobacterium rhizogenes* rolA, rolB and rolC genes involved in root formation, *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* Aux1, Aux2 genes involved in auxin biosynthesis (indole-3-acetamide hydrolase or tryptophan-2-monooxygenase genes), *Arabidopsis thaliana* leafy cotyledon genes (e.g. Lec1, Lec2) promoting embryogenesis and shoot formation (see Stone et al., Proc. Natl Acad. Sci USA 98: 11806-11811), *Arabidopsis thaliana* ESR1 gene involved in shoot formation (see Banno et al., Plant Cell 13: 2609-2618), *Arabidopsis thaliana* PGA6/WUSCHEL gene involved in embryogenesis (see Zuo et al., Plant J. 30: 349-359).

In yet a further embodiment, the invention contemplates methods for selecting modified plant cells or plant parts containing mini-chromosomes for regeneration. Such methods include assays for identifying adchromosomal plants or cells by determining that mini-chromosomes within the modified plant cell or plant are functional, stable, and autonomous. Exemplary assays for assessing mini-chromosome performance include lineage-based inheritance assays, use of chromosome loss agents to demonstrate autonomy, global mitotic mini-chromosome

inheritance assays (sectoring assays) with or without the use of agents inducing chromosomal loss, assays measuring expression levels of marker genes in the mini-chromosome over time and space in a plant, physical assays for separation of autonomous mini-chromosomes from endogenous nuclear chromosomes of plants, 5 molecular assays demonstrating conserved mini-chromosome structure, such as PCR, Southern blots, mini-chromosome rescue, cloning and characterization of mini-chromosome sequences present in the plant, cytological assays detecting mini-chromosome presence in the cell's genome (e.g. FISH) and meiotic mini-chromosome inheritance assays, which measure the levels of mini-chromosome inheritance into a 10 subsequent generation of plants via meiosis and gametes, embryos, endosperm or seeds.

The invention also contemplates novel methods of screening for adchromosomal plant cells that involve use of relatively low, sub-killing concentrations of selection agent (e.g. sub-killing antibiotic concentrations), and also 15 involve use of a screenable marker (e.g., a visible marker gene) to identify clusters of modified cells carrying the screenable marker, after which these screenable cells are manipulated to homogeneity. Another aspect of the present invention is related to methods of making and compositions of non-plant promoters for expressing genes in plants.

20 The invention further provides isolated promoter nucleic acid sequences comprising any one of SEQ ID NOS: 4 to 23, or fragments or variants thereof that retain expression-promoting activity. Mini-chromosomes comprising non-plant promoter sequences such as these that are operably linked to plant-expressed genes (e.g., genes that confer a different phenotype on plants), are 25 contemplated as are plants comprising such mini-chromosomes.

Another aspect is related to methods for using exonuclease to enrich for circular mini-chromosome DNA in genomic DNA preparations.

Another aspect of the invention relates to methods for using such adchromosomal plants containing a mini-chromosome for producing food products, 30 pharmaceutical products and chemical products by appropriate expression of exogenous nucleic acid(s) contained within the mini-chromosome(s).

It has also been shown herein that mini-chromosomes containing centromeres from one plant species, when inserted into plant cells of a different species or even a different genus or family, can be stable, functional and autonomous. For example, as shown herein, a broccoli centromere (*B. oleraceae*) is functional in a canola (*B. napus*) plant. Similarly, a tomato (*Lycopersicum*) centromere is functional in a tobacco (*Nicotiana*) plant. A soybean (*G. max*) centromere is functional in a broccoli (*B. oleraceae*) and tobacco plant. Tobacco and tomato are in the same family of Solanaceae plants. Soybean is in the Leguminosae family and broccoli is in the Brassicaceae family. Thus, another aspect of the invention is an adchromosomal plant comprising a functional, stable, autonomous mini-chromosome that contains centromere sequence derived from a different taxonomic plant species, or derived from a different taxonomic plant species, genus, family, order or class.

Yet another aspect of the invention provides novel autonomous mini-chromosomes with novel compositions and structures which are used to transform plant cells which are in turn used to generate a plant (or multiple plants). Exemplary mini-chromosomes of the invention are contemplated to be of a size 2000 kb or less in length. Other exemplary sizes of mini-chromosomes include less than or equal to, e.g., 1500 kb, 1000 kb, 900 kb, 800 kb, 700 kb, 600 kb, 500 kb, 450 kb, 400 kb, 350 kb, 300 kb, 250 kb, 200 kb, 150 kb, 100 kb, 80 kb, 60 kb, or 40 kb in length.

In a related aspect, novel centromere compositions as characterized by sequence content, size or other parameters are provided. Preferably, the minimal size of centromeric sequence is utilized in mini-chromosome construction. Exemplary sizes include a centromeric nucleic acid insert derived from a portion of plant genomic DNA, that is less than or equal to 1000 kb, 900 kb, 800 kb, 700 kb, 600 kb, 500 kb, 400 kb, 300 kb, 200 kb, 150 kb, 100 kb, 95 kb, 90 kb, 85 kb, 80 kb, 75 kb, 70 kb, 65 kb, 60 kb, 55 kb, 50 kb, 45 kb, 40 kb, 35 kb, 30 kb, 25 kb, 20 kb, 15 kb, 10 kb, 5 kb, or 2 kb in length. For example, rescued functional variant soybean centromeric sequences have been shown to be less than 30 kb in size. Another related aspect is the novel structure of the mini-chromosome, particularly structures lacking bacterial sequences, e.g., required for bacterial propagation.

In exemplary embodiments the invention contemplates mini-chromosomes or other vectors comprising a repeated nucleotide sequence derived from a *Brassica* plant and adchromosomal plants or parts containing these mini-

chromosomes. Exemplary repeated nucleotide sequences include (1) SEQ ID NO:1, SEQ ID NO: 2, SEQ ID NO:3, SEQ ID NO: 51 or SEQ ID NO: 52, or fragments or variants thereof, (2) combinations of any of these *Brassica* sequences or a fragment or variant thereof with another *Brassica*-derived centromeric nucleotide sequence, (3) combinations of any of these *Brassica* sequences or a fragment or variant thereof with a centromeric nucleotide sequence derived from a different plant species, and (4) combinations of any of the above with artificially synthesized centromeric nucleotide sequences.

In exemplary embodiments the invention also contemplates mini-chromosomes or other vectors comprising a repeated nucleotide sequence derived from a *Glycine max* plant and adchromosomal plants or parts containing these mini-chromosomes. Exemplary repeated nucleotide sequences include (1) SEQ ID NO: 24, SEQ ID NO: 25, SEQ ID NO:26, or fragments or variants thereof, (2) combinations of any of these soybean sequences or a fragment or variant thereof with another soybean-derived centromeric nucleotide sequence, (3) combinations of any of these soybean sequences or a fragment or variant thereof with a centromeric nucleotide sequence derived from a different plant species, and (4) combinations of any of the above with artificially synthesized centromeric nucleotide sequences.

In exemplary embodiments, the invention also contemplates mini-chromosomes or other vectors comprising fragments or variants of the genomic DNA inserts of the BAC clones [identified as BB5, SB6, TB99, ZB19, or ZB113] deposited on February 23, 2005 with the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC), P.O. Box 1549 Manassas, VA 20108, USA, under Accession Nos. \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, respectively], or naturally occurring descendants thereof, that retain the ability to segregate during mitotic or meiotic division as described herein, as well as adchromosomal plants or parts containing these mini-chromosomes. Other exemplary embodiments include fragments or variants of the genomic DNA inserts of any of the BAC clones identified herein, or descendants thereof, and fragments or variants of the centromeric nucleic acid inserts of any of the vectors or mini-chromosomes identified herein.

In other exemplary embodiments, the invention contemplates mini-chromosomes or other vectors comprising centromeric nucleotide sequence that when hybridized to 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 or more of the probes described in the examples

herein, under hybridization conditions described herein, e.g. low, medium or high stringency, provides relative hybridization scores as described in the examples herein. Preferably the probes for which relative hybridization scores are described herein as 5/10 or greater are used, and a hybridization signal greater than background for one or more of these probes is used to select clones. Adchromosomal plants or parts containing such mini-chromosomes are contemplated.

The advantages of the present invention include: provision of an autonomous, independent genetic linkage group for accelerating breeding; lack of disruption of host genome; multiple gene "stacking" of large numbers of genes with a potentially unlimited payload; uniformity of genetic composition exogenous DNA sequences in plant cells and plants containing autonomous mini-chromosomes; defined genetic context for predictable gene expression; higher frequency occurrence and recovery of plant cells and plants containing stably maintained exogenous DNA due to elimination of inefficient integration step; and the ability to eliminate mini-chromosomes in any tissues.

#### **I. Composition of mini-chromosomes and mini-chromosome construction**

The mini-chromosome vector of the present invention may contain a variety of elements, including (1) sequences that function as plant centromeres, (2) one or more exogenous nucleic acids, including, for example, plant-expressed genes, (3) sequences that function as an origin of replication, which may be included in the region that functions as plant centromere, (4) optionally, a bacterial plasmid backbone for propagation of the plasmid in bacteria, (5) optionally, sequences that function as plant telomeres, (6) optionally, additional "stuffer DNA" sequences that serve to separate the various components on the mini-chromosome from each other, (7) optionally "buffer" sequences such as MARs or SARs, (8) optionally marker sequences of any origin, including but not limited to plant and bacterial origin, (9) optionally, sequences that serve as recombination sites, and (10) "chromatin packaging sequences" such as cohesion and condensing binding sites.

The mini-chromosomes of the present invention may be constructed to include various components which are novel, which include, but are not limited to, the centromere comprising novel repeating centromeric sequences, and the promoters,

particularly promoters derived from non-plant species, as described in further detail below.

The mini-chromosomes of the present invention may be constructed to include various components which are novel, which include, but are not limited to, the centromere comprising novel repeating centromeric sequences, and the promoters, particularly promoters derived from non-plant species, as described in further detail below.

#### Novel centromere compositions

The centromere in the mini-chromosome of the present invention may comprise novel repeating centromeric sequences. An example of the mini-chromosome in the present invention is the *Brassica* BB5R4-1 mini-chromosome. The sequences set out as SEQ ID NOS:1 to 3 are relevant to the BB5R4-1 mini-chromosomes. The centromere of the BB5R4-1 mini-chromosome is 50 kb of *Brassica* centromere DNA as determined by CHEF gel analysis. To determine the sequence composition of the centromere, the mini-chromosome was randomly sheared and small fragments were cloned for sequencing, from which 11,010 bases of sequence were obtained from the centromere insert, a 0.17x coverage of the centromere. Of this sequence 9,533 bases were composed of centromere satellite repeat, the consensus of which is shown in SEQ ID NO:2. The satellite repeat was found to be 180+/-2 bp long. The remaining 1,477 bases of mini-chromosome sequence covered a unique sequence set out as SEQ ID NO:3. This sequence is considered a sampling of the centromere content of BB5R4-1.

Additional sequence analysis of another sampling of the *Brassica* centromere content of BB5R4-1 analyzing 7 contigs (1,175,176,177,180,184) that contain 118 canrep repeats from BB5R4-1 with repeat lengths of: 113x176 bp, 1x175 bp and 4x174 bp generated the consensus sequence set out in SEQ ID NO: 51. A consensus sequence was also built from 135 tandem repeats obtained from another mini-chromosome, BB280R2-3; from the largest contig (33703 kb) spanning a total of 23782 bp. The repeat lengths are: 125x176 bp, 4x182 bp, 4x175 bp and 2x177 bp and this sequence is set out as SEQ ID NO: 52. An alignment of SEQ ID NOS: 2, 51 and 52 is set out in Figure 5.



In another example, individual satellite repeats from soybean BAC clone SB12R2-3 (SEQ ID NO: 24) showed an average of 91.3% (s.d.=11.3%) identity to each other, with specific regions showing significantly higher and lower levels of variability. Comparing the satellite repeat consensus from SB12R2-3 to that obtained from randomly sampled soybean satellite sequences ChrGm1 (SEQ ID NO: 25) and ChrGm2 (SEQ ID NO: 26), see U.S. Patent Application 20030124561: *Plant centromere compositions*) identified several bases that differed significantly ( $\chi^2$  test,  $P < 0.05$ ). The SB12MC satellite repeats showed an average length of  $91.07 \pm 0.40$  bp, similar to the ChrGm2 91-base consensus and differing from the ChrGm1 92-base consensus. An alignment of the of consensus centromere satellite repeats is set out in Figure 6.

Exemplary embodiments of centromere nucleic acid sequences according to the present invention include fragments or variants of the genomic DNA inserts of the BAC clones [identified as BB5, SB6, TB99, ZB19, or ZB113 deposited on February 23, 2005 with the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC), P.O. Box 1549 Manassas, VA 20108, USA, under Accession Nos. \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, respectively] that retain the ability to segregate during mitotic or meiotic division as described herein. Variants of such sequences include artificially produced modifications as described herein and modifications produced via passaging through one or more bacterial, plant or other host cells as described herein.

Vectors comprising one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, 15 or 20 or more of the elements contained in any of the exemplary vectors described in the examples below are also contemplated.

The invention specifically contemplates the alternative use of fragments or variants (mutants) of any of the nucleic acids described herein that retain the desired activity, including nucleic acids that function as centromeres, nucleic acids that function as promoters or other regulatory control sequences, or exogenous nucleic acids. Variants may have one or more additions, substitutions or deletions of nucleotides within the original nucleotide sequence. Variants include nucleic acid sequences that are at least 50%, 55%, 60, 65, 70, 75, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, or 100% identical to the original nucleic acid sequence. Variants also include nucleic acid sequences that hybridize under low, medium, high or very high stringency conditions to the original nucleic acid sequence.

Similarly, the specification also contemplates the alternative use of fragments or variants of any of the polypeptides described herein.

The comparison of sequences and determination of percent identity between two nucleotide sequences can be accomplished using a mathematical  
5 algorithm. In a preferred embodiment, the percent identity between two amino acid sequences is determined using the Needleman and Wunsch (1970) J. Mol. Biol. 48:444-453 algorithm which has been incorporated into the GAP program in the GCG software package (available at [www.gcg.com](http://www.gcg.com)), using either a Blossum 62 matrix or a PAM250 matrix. Preferably parameters are set so as to maximize the percent identity.

10 As used herein, the term "hybridizes under low stringency, medium stringency, and high stringency conditions" describes conditions for hybridization and washing. Guidance for performing hybridization reactions can be found in Current Protocols in Molecular Biology (1989) John Wiley & Sons, N.Y., 6.3.1-6.3.6, which is incorporated by reference. Aqueous and non-aqueous methods are described in that  
15 reference and either can be used. Specific hybridization conditions referred to herein are as follows: 1) low stringency hybridization conditions in 6 x sodium chloride/sodium citrate (SSC) at about 45°C, followed by two washes in 0.5 x SSC, 0.1% SDS, at least at 50°C; 2) medium stringency hybridization conditions in 6 x SSC at about 45°C, followed by one or more washes in 0.2 x SSC, 0.1% SDS at 55°C; 3)  
20 high stringency hybridization conditions in 6 x SSC at about 45°C, followed by one or more washes in 0.2 x SSC, 0.1% SDS at 65°C.

#### **Mini-chromosome sequence content and structure**

Plant-expressed genes from non-plant sources may be modified to accommodate plant codon usage, to insert preferred motifs near the translation  
25 initiation ATG codon, to remove sequences recognized in plants as 5' or 3' splice sites, or to better reflect plant GC/AT content. Plant genes typically have a GC content of more than 35%, and coding sequences which are rich in A and T nucleotides can be problematic. For example, ATTTA motifs may destabilize mRNA; plant polyadenylation signals such as AATAAA at inappropriate positions  
30 within the message may cause premature truncation of transcription; and monocotyledons may recognize AT-rich sequences as splice sites.

Each exogenous nucleic acid or plant-expressed gene may include a promoter, a coding region and a terminator sequence, which may be separated from each other by restriction endonuclease sites or recombination sites or both. Genes may also include introns, which may be present in any number and at any position within the transcribed portion of the gene, including the 5' untranslated sequence, the coding region and the 3' untranslated sequence. Introns may be natural plant introns derived from any plant, or artificial introns based on the splice site consensus that has been defined for plant species. Some intron sequences have been shown to enhance expression in plants. Optionally the exogenous nucleic acid may include a plant transcriptional terminator, non-translated leader sequences derived from viruses that enhance expression, a minimal promoter, or a signal sequence controlling the targeting of gene products to plant compartments or organelles.

The coding regions of the genes can encode any protein, including but not limited to visible marker genes (for example, fluorescent protein genes, other genes conferring a visible phenotype to the plant) or other screenable or selectable marker genes (for example, conferring resistance to antibiotics, herbicides or other toxic compounds or encoding a protein that confers a growth advantage to the cell expressing the protein) or genes which confer some commercial or agronomic value to the adchromosomal plant. Multiple genes can be placed on the same mini-chromosome vector, limited only by the number of restriction endonuclease sites or site-specific recombination sites present in the vector. The genes may be separated from each other by restriction endonuclease sites, homing endonuclease sites, recombination sites or any combinations thereof. Any number of genes can be present. Figures 1 and 2 show mini-chromosome vector structures with 2 and 4 genes, respectively.

The mini-chromosome vector may also contain a bacterial plasmid backbone for propagation of the plasmid in bacteria such as *E. coli*, *A. tumefaciens*, or *A. rhizogenes*. The plasmid backbone may be that of a low-copy vector or in other embodiments it may be desirable to use a mid to high level copy backbone. In one embodiment of the invention, this backbone contains the replicon of the F' plasmid of *E. coli*. However, other plasmid replicons, such as the bacteriophage P1 replicon, or other low-copy plasmid systems such as the RK2 replication origin, may also be used. The backbone may include one or several antibiotic-resistance genes conferring

resistance to a specific antibiotic to the bacterial cell in which the plasmid is present. Bacterial antibiotic-resistance genes include but are not limited to kanamycin-, ampicillin-, chloramphenicol-, streptomycin-, spectinomycin-, tetracycline- and gentamycin-resistance genes.

5                   The mini-chromosome vector may also contain plant telomeres. An exemplary telomere sequence is TTTAGGG or its complement. Telomeres are specialized DNA structures at the ends of linear chromosomes that function to stabilize the ends and facilitate the complete replication of the extreme termini of the DNA molecule (Richards et. al., Cell.1988 Apr 8;53(1):127-36; Ausubel et al.,  
10   Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, Wiley & Sons, 1997).

                  Additionally, the mini-chromosome vector may contain "stuffer DNA" sequences that serve to separate the various components on the mini-chromosome (centromere, genes, telomeres) from each other. The stuffer DNA may be of any origin, prokaryotic or eukaryotic, and from any genome or species, plant, animal,  
15   microbe or organelle, or may be of synthetic origin. The stuffer DNA can range from 100 bp to 10 Mb in length and can be repetitive in sequence, with unit repeats from 10 to 1,000,000 bp. Examples of repetitive sequences that can be used as stuffer DNAs include but are not limited to: rDNA, satellite repeats, retroelements, transposons, pseudogenes, transcribed genes, microsatellites, tDNA genes, short sequence repeats  
20   and combinations thereof. Alternatively, the stuffer DNA can consist of unique, non-repetitive DNA of any origin or sequence. The stuffer sequences may also include DNA with the ability to form boundary domains, such as but not limited to scaffold attachment regions (SARs) or matrix attachment regions (MARs). The stuffer DNA may be entirely synthetic, composed of random sequence. In this case, the stuffer  
25   DNA may have any base composition, or any A/T or G/C content. For example, the G/C content of the stuffer DNA could resemble that of the plant (~30-40%), or could be much lower (0-30%) or much higher (40-100%). Alternatively, the stuffer sequences could be synthesized to contain an excess of any given nucleotide such as A, C, G or T. Different synthetic stuffers of different compositions may also be  
30   combined with each other. For example a fragment with low G/C content may be flanked or abutted by a fragment of medium or high G/C content, or vice versa.

                  In one embodiment of the invention, the mini-chromosome has a circular structure without telomeres, as shown in Figures 1 and 2 "circular". In

another embodiment, the mini-chromosome has a circular structure with telomeres, as shown in Figures 1 and 2 "linear". In a third embodiment, the mini-chromosome has a linear structure with telomeres, as would result if the "linear" structure shown in Figures 1 and 2 were to be cut with a unique endonuclease, exposing the telomeres at the ends of a DNA molecule that contains all of the sequence contained in the original, closed construct with the exception of the antibiotic-resistance gene #1. In a fourth embodiment of the invention, the telomeres could be placed in such a manner that the bacterial replicon, backbone sequences, antibiotic-resistance genes and any other sequences of bacterial origin and present for the purposes of propagation of the mini-chromosome in bacteria, can be removed from the plant-expressed genes, the centromere, telomeres, and other sequences by cutting the structure with unique endonuclease #2 (Figure 3). This results in a mini-chromosome from which much of, or preferably all, bacterial sequences have been removed. In this embodiment, bacterial sequence present between or among the plant-expressed genes or other mini-chromosome sequences would be excised prior to removal of the remaining bacterial sequences by cutting the mini-chromosome with homing endonuclease #1, and re-ligating the structure such that the antibiotic-resistance gene #1 has been lost (Figure 3). In all of the structures shown in figures 1, 2 and 3, the unique endonuclease site may be the recognition sequence of a homing endonuclease. Alternatively, the endonucleases and their sites can be replaced with any specific DNA cutting mechanism and its specific recognition site such as rare-cutting endonuclease or recombinase and its specific recognition site, as long as that site is present in the mini-chromosomes only at the indicated positions.

Various structural configurations are possible by which mini-chromosome elements can be oriented with respect to each other. A centromere can be placed on a mini-chromosome either between genes or outside a cluster of genes next to one telomere or next to the other telomere. Stuffer DNAs can be combined with these configurations to place the stuffer sequences inside the telomeres, around the centromere between genes or any combination thereof. Thus, a large number of alternative mini-chromosome structures are possible, depending on the relative placement of centromere DNA, genes, stuffer DNAs, bacterial sequences, telomeres, and other sequences. The sequence content of each of these variants is the same, but their structure may be different depending on how the sequences are placed. These

variations in architecture are possible both for linear and for circular mini-chromosomes.

### Exemplary centromere components

Centromere components may be isolated or derived from native plant genome, for example, modified through recombinant techniques or through the cell-based techniques described below. Alternatively, wholly artificial centromere components may be constructed using as a general guide the sequence of native centromeres. Combinations of centromere components derived from natural sources and/or combinations of naturally derived and artificial components are also contemplated. As noted above, centromere sequence from one taxonomic plant species has been shown to be functional in another taxonomic plant species, genus and family.

In one embodiment, the centromere contains  $n$  copies of a repeated nucleotide sequence obtained by the methods disclosed herein, wherein  $n$  is at least 2. In another embodiment, the centromere contains  $n$  copies of interdigitated repeats. An interdigitated repeat is a DNA sequence that consists of two distinct repetitive elements that combine to create a unique permutation. Potentially any number of repeat copies capable of physically being placed on the recombinant construct could be included on the construct, including about 5, 10, 15, 20, 30, 50, 75, 100, 150, 200, 300, 400, 500, 750, 1,000, 1,500, 2,000, 3,000, 5,000, 7,500, 10,000, 20,000, 30,000, 40,000, 50,000, 60,000, 70,000, 80,000, 90,000 and about 100,000, including all ranges in-between such copy numbers. Moreover, the copies, while largely identical, can vary from each other. Such repeat variation is commonly observed in naturally occurring centromeres. The length of the repeat may vary, but will preferably range from about 20 bp to about 360 bp, from about 20 bp to about 250 bp, from about 50 bp to about 225 bp, from about 75 bp to about 210 bp, such as a 92 bp repeat and a 97 bp repeat, from about 100 bp to about 205 bp, from about 125 bp to about 200 bp, from about 150 bp to about 195 bp, from about 160 bp to about 190 and from about 170 bp to about 185 bp including about 180 bp.

### *30 Modification of centromeres isolated from native plant genome*

Modification and changes may be made in the centromeric DNA segments of the current invention and still obtain a functional molecule with desirable

characteristics. The following is a discussion based upon changing the nucleic acids of a centromere to create an equivalent, or even an improved, second generation molecule.

In particular embodiments of the invention, mutated centromeric sequences are contemplated to be useful for increasing the utility of the centromere. It is specifically contemplated that the function of the centromeres of the current invention may be based in part or in whole upon the secondary structure of the DNA sequences of the centromere, modification of the DNA with methyl groups or other adducts, and / or the proteins which interact with the centromere. By changing the DNA sequence of the centromere, one may alter the affinity of one or more centromere-associated protein(s) for the centromere and / or the secondary structure or modification of the centromeric sequences, thereby changing the activity of the centromere. Alternatively, changes may be made in the centromeres of the invention which do not affect the activity of the centromere. Changes in the centromeric sequences which reduce the size of the DNA segment needed to confer centromere activity are contemplated to be particularly useful in the current invention, as would changes which increased the fidelity with which the centromere was transmitted during mitosis and meiosis.

*Modification of centromeres by passage through bacteria, plant or other hosts or processes*

In the methods of the present invention, the resulting mini-chromosome DNA sequence may also be a derivative of the parental clone or centromere clone having substitutions, deletions, insertions, duplications and/or rearrangements of one or more nucleotides in the nucleic acid sequence. Such nucleotide mutations may occur individually or consecutively in stretches of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 10, 20, 40, 80, 100, 200, 400, 800, 1000, 2000, 4000, 8000, 10000, 50000, 100000, and about 200000, including all ranges in-between.

Variations of mini-chromosomes may arise through passage of mini-chromosomes through various hosts including virus, bacteria, yeast, plant or other prokaryotic or eukaryotic organism and may occur through passage of multiple hosts or individual host. Variations may also occur by replicating the mini-chromosome in vitro.

Derivatives may be identified through sequence analysis, or variations in mini-chromosome molecular weight through electrophoresis such as, but not limited to, CHEF gel analysis, column or gradient separation, or any other methods used in the field to determine and/or analyze DNA molecular weight or sequence content. Alternately, derivatives may be identified by the altered activity of a derivative in conferring centromere function to a mini-chromosome.

**Exemplary exogenous nucleic acids including plant-expressed genes**

Of particular interest in the present invention are exogenous nucleic acids which when introduced into plants alter the phenotype of the plant, a plant organ, plant tissue, or portion of the plant. Exemplary exogenous nucleic acids encode polypeptides involved in one or more important biological properties in plants. Other exemplary exogenous nucleic acids alter expression of exogenous or endogenous genes, either increasing or decreasing expression, optionally in response to a specific signal or stimulus.

As used herein, the term "trait" can refer either to the altered phenotype of interest or the nucleic acid which causes the altered phenotype of interest.

One of the major purposes of transformation of crop plants is to add some commercially desirable, agronomically important traits to the plant. Such traits include, but are not limited to, herbicide resistance or tolerance; insect (pest) resistance or tolerance; disease resistance or tolerance (viral, bacterial, fungal, nematode or other pathogens); stress tolerance and/or resistance, as exemplified by resistance or tolerance to drought, heat, chilling, freezing, excessive moisture, salt stress, mechanical stress, extreme acidity, alkalinity, toxins, UV light, ionizing radiation or oxidative stress; increased yields, whether in quantity or quality; enhanced or altered nutrient acquisition and enhanced or altered metabolic efficiency; enhanced or altered nutritional content and makeup of plant tissues used for food, feed, fiber or processing; physical appearance; male sterility; drydown; standability; prolificacy; starch quantity and quality; oil quantity and quality; protein quality and quantity; amino acid composition; modified chemical production; altered pharmaceutical or nutraceutical properties; altered bioremediation properties; increased biomass; altered growth rate; altered fitness; altered biodegradability; altered CO<sub>2</sub> fixation; presence of bioindicator activity; altered digestibility by humans



or animals; altered allergenicity; altered mating characteristics; altered pollen dispersal; improved environmental impact; altered nitrogen fixation capability; the production of a pharmaceutically active protein; the production of a small molecule with medicinal properties; the production of a chemical including those with industrial utility; the production of nutraceuticals, food additives, carbohydrates, RNAs, lipids, fuels, dyes, pigments, vitamins, scents, flavors, vaccines, antibodies, hormones, and the like; and alterations in plant architecture or development, including changes in developmental timing, photosynthesis, signal transduction, cell growth, reproduction, or differentiation. Additionally one could create a library of an entire genome from any organism or organelle including mammals, plants, microbes, fungi, or bacteria, represented on mini-chromosomes.

In one embodiment, the modified plant may exhibit increased or decreased expression or accumulation of a product of the plant, which may be a natural product of the plant or a new or altered product of the plant. Exemplary products include an enzyme, an RNA molecule, a nutritional protein, a structural protein, an amino acid, a lipid, a fatty acid, a polysaccharide, a sugar, an alcohol, an alkaloid, a carotenoid, a propanoid, a phenylpropanoid, or terpenoid, a steroid, a flavonoid, a phenolic compound, an anthocyanin, a pigment, a vitamin or a plant hormone. In another embodiment, the modified plant has enhanced or diminished requirement for light, water, nitrogen, or trace elements. In another embodiment the modified plant has an enhance ability to capture or fix nitrogen from its environment. In yet another embodiment, the modified plant is enriched for an essential amino acid as a proportion of a protein fraction of the plant. The protein fraction may be, for example, total seed protein, soluble protein, insoluble protein, water-extractable protein, and lipid-associated protein. The modification may include overexpression, underexpression, antisense modulation, sense suppression, inducible expression, inducible repression, or inducible modulation of a gene.

A brief summary of exemplary improved properties and polypeptides of interest for either increased or decreased expression is provided below.

(i) *Herbicide Resistance*

A herbicide resistance (or tolerance) trait is a characteristic of a modified plant that is resistant to dosages of an herbicide that is typically lethal to a

non-modified plant. Exemplary herbicides for which resistance is useful in a plant include glyphosate herbicides, phosphinothricin herbicides, oxynil herbicides, imidazolinone herbicides, dinitroaniline herbicides, pyridine herbicides, sulfonylurea herbicides, bialaphos herbicides, sulfonamide herbicides and glufosinate herbicides. Other herbicides would be useful as would combinations of herbicide genes on the same mini-chromosome.

The genes encoding phosphinothricin acetyltransferase (bar), glyphosate tolerant EPSP synthase genes, glyphosate acetyltransferase, the glyphosate degradative enzyme gene gox encoding glyphosate oxidoreductase, deh (encoding a dehalogenase enzyme that inactivates dalapon), herbicide resistant (e.g., sulfonylurea and imidazolinone) acetolactate synthase, and bxn genes (encoding a nitrilase enzyme that degrades bromoxynil) are good examples of herbicide resistant genes for use in transformation. The bar gene codes for an enzyme, phosphinothricin acetyltransferase (PAT), which inactivates the herbicide phosphinothricin and prevents this compound from inhibiting glutamine synthetase enzymes. The enzyme 5-enolpyruvylshikimate 3-phosphate synthase (EPSP Synthase), is normally inhibited by the herbicide N-(phosphonomethyl)glycine (glyphosate). However, genes are known that encode glyphosate resistant EPSP synthase enzymes. These genes are particularly contemplated for use in plant transformation. The deh gene encodes the enzyme dalapon dehalogenase and confers resistance to the herbicide dalapon. The bxn gene codes for a specific nitrilase enzyme that converts bromoxynil to a non-herbicidal degradation product. The glyphosate acetyltransferase gene inactivates the herbicide glyphosate and prevents this compound from inhibiting EPSP synthase.

Polypeptides that may produce plants having tolerance to plant herbicides include polypeptides involved in the shikimate pathway, which are of interest for providing glyphosate tolerant plants. Such polypeptides include polypeptides involved in biosynthesis of chorismate, phenylalanine, tyrosine and tryptophan.

#### (ii) *Insect Resistance*

Potential insect resistance (or tolerance) genes that can be introduced include *Bacillus thuringiensis* crystal toxin genes or Bt genes (Watrud et al., In: Engineered Organisms and the Environment, 1985). Bt genes may provide resistance

to lepidopteran or coleopteran pests such as European Corn Borer (ECB). Preferred Bt toxin genes for use in such embodiments include the CryIA(b) and CryIA(c) genes. Endotoxin genes from other species of *B. thuringiensis* which affect insect growth or development also may be employed in this regard.

It is contemplated that preferred Bt genes for use in the mini-chromosomes disclosed herein will be those in which the coding sequence has been modified to effect increased expression in plants, and for example, in monocot plants. Means for preparing synthetic genes are well known in the art and are disclosed in, for example, U.S. Patent No. 5,500,365 and U.S. Patent Number No. 5,689,052, each of the disclosures of which are specifically incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. Examples of such modified Bt toxin genes include a synthetic Bt CryIA(b) gene (Perlak et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 88:3324-3328, 1991), and the synthetic CryIA(c) gene termed 1800b (PCT Application WO 95/06128). Some examples of other Bt toxin genes known to those of skill in the art are given in Table 1 below.

**Table 1: *Bacillus thuringiensis* Endotoxin Genes<sup>a</sup>**

New Nomenclature	Old Nomenclature	GenBank Accession
CryIAa	CryIA(a)	M11250
CryIAb	CryIA(b)	M13898
CryIAc	CryIA(c)	M11068
CryIAd	CryIA(d)	M73250
CryIAe	CryIA(e)	M65252
CryIBa	CryIB	X06711
CryIBb	ET5	L32020
CryIBc	PEG5	Z46442
CryIBd	CryEI	U70726
CryICa	CryIC	X07518
CryICb	CryIC(b)	M97880
CryIDa	CryID	X54160

CryIDb	PrtB	Z22511
CryIEa	CryIE	X53985
CryIEb	CryIE(b)	M73253
CryIFa	CryIF	M63897
CryIFb	PrtD	Z22512
CryIGa	PrtA	Z22510
CryIGb	CryH2	U70725
CryIHa	PrtC	Z22513
CryIHb		U35780
CryIIa	CryV	X62821
CryIIb	CryV	U07642
CryIJa	ET4	L32019
CryIJb	ET1	U31527
CryIK		U28801
Cry2Aa	CryIIA	M31738
Cry2Ab	CryIIB	M23724
Cry2Ac	CryIIC	X57252
Cry3A	CryIIIA	M22472
Cry3Ba	CryIIIB	X17123
Cry3Bb	CryIIIB2	M89794
Cry3C	CryIIID	X59797
Cry4A	CryIVA	Y00423
Cry4B	CryIVB	X07423
Cry5Aa	CryVA(a)	L07025
Cry5Ab	CryVA(b)	L07026

Cry6A	CryVIA	L07022
Cry6B	CryVIB	L07024
Cry7Aa	CryIIIC	M64478
Cry7Ab	CryIIICb	U04367
Cry8A	CryIIIE	U04364
Cry8B	CryIIIG	U04365
Cry8C	CryIIIF	U04366
Cry9A	CryIG	X58120
Cry9B	CryIX	X75019
Cry9C	CryIH	Z37527
Cry10A	CryIVC	M12662
Cry11A	CryIVD	M31737
Cry11B	Jeg80	X86902
Cry12A	CryVB	L07027
Cry13A	CryVC	L07023
Cry14A	CryVD	U13955
Cry15A	34kDa	M76442
Cry16A	cbm71	X94146
Cry17A	cbm71	X99478
Cry18A	CryBP1	X99049
Cry19A	Jeg65	Y08920
Cyt1Aa	CytA	X03182
Cyt1Ab	CytM	X98793
Cyt2A	CytB	Z14147
Cyt2B	CytB	U52043

<sup>a</sup>Adapted from: [http://epunix.biols.susx.ac.uk/Home/Neil\\_Crickmore/Bt/index.html](http://epunix.biols.susx.ac.uk/Home/Neil_Crickmore/Bt/index.html)

Protease inhibitors also may provide insect resistance (Johnson et al., Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1989 December; 86(24): 9871-9875.), and will thus have utility in plant transformation. The use of a protease inhibitor II gene, pinII, from tomato or potato is envisioned to be particularly useful. Even more advantageous is the use of a pinII gene in combination with a Bt toxin gene, the combined effect of which has been discovered to produce synergistic insecticidal activity. Other genes which encode inhibitors of the insect's digestive system, or those that encode enzymes or co factors that facilitate the production of inhibitors, also may be useful. This group may be exemplified by oryzacystatin and amylase inhibitors such as those from wheat and barley.

Amylase inhibitors are found in various plant species and are used to ward off insect predation via inhibition of the digestive amylases of attacking insects. Several amylase inhibitor genes have been isolated from plants and some have been introduced as exogenous nucleic acids, conferring an insect resistant phenotype that is potentially useful ("Plants, Genes, and Crop Biotechnology" by Maarten J. Chrispeels and David E. Sadava (2003) Jones and Bartlett Press).

Genes encoding lectins may confer additional or alternative insecticide properties. Lectins are multivalent carbohydrate binding proteins which have the ability to agglutinate red blood cells from a range of species. Lectins have been identified recently as insecticidal agents with activity against weevils, ECB and rootworm (Murdock et al., Phytochemistry, 29:85-89, 1990, Czapla & Lang, J. Econ. Entomol., 83:2480-2485, 1990). Lectin genes contemplated to be useful include, for example, barley and wheat germ agglutinin (WGA) and rice lectins (Gatehouse et al., J. Sci. Food. Agric., 35:373-380, 1984), with WGA being preferred.

Genes controlling the production of large or small polypeptides active against insects when introduced into the insect pests, such as, e.g., lytic peptides, peptide hormones and toxins and venoms, form another aspect of the invention. For example, it is contemplated that the expression of juvenile hormone esterase, directed towards specific insect pests, also may result in insecticidal activity, or perhaps cause cessation of metamorphosis (Hammock et al., Nature, 344:458-461, 1990).

Genes which encode enzymes that affect the integrity of the insect cuticle form yet another aspect of the invention. Such genes include those encoding,

e.g., chitinase, proteases, lipases and also genes for the production of nikkomycin, a compound that inhibits chitin synthesis, the introduction of any of which is contemplated to produce insect resistant plants. Genes that code for activities that affect insect molting, such as those affecting the production of ecdysteroid UDP glucosyl transferase, also fall within the scope of the useful exogenous nucleic acids of the present invention.

Genes that code for enzymes that facilitate the production of compounds that reduce the nutritional quality of the host plant to insect pests also are encompassed by the present invention. It may be possible, for instance, to confer insecticidal activity on a plant by altering its sterol composition. Sterols are obtained by insects from their diet and are used for hormone synthesis and membrane stability. Therefore alterations in plant sterol composition by expression of novel genes, e.g., those that directly promote the production of undesirable sterols or those that convert desirable sterols into undesirable forms, could have a negative effect on insect growth and/or development and hence endow the plant with insecticidal activity. Lipxygenases are naturally occurring plant enzymes that have been shown to exhibit anti nutritional effects on insects and to reduce the nutritional quality of their diet. Therefore, further embodiments of the invention concern modified plants with enhanced lipxygenase activity which may be resistant to insect feeding.

*Tripsacum dactyloides* is a species of grass that is resistant to certain insects, including corn root worm. It is anticipated that genes encoding proteins that are toxic to insects or are involved in the biosynthesis of compounds toxic to insects will be isolated from *Tripsacum* and that these novel genes will be useful in conferring resistance to insects. It is known that the basis of insect resistance in *Tripsacum* is genetic, because said resistance has been transferred to *Zea mays* via sexual crosses (Branson and Guss, Proceedings North Central Branch Entomological Society of America, 27:91-95, 1972). It is further anticipated that other cereal, monocot or dicot plant species may have genes encoding proteins that are toxic to insects which would be useful for producing insect resistant plants.

Further genes encoding proteins characterized as having potential insecticidal activity also may be used as exogenous nucleic acids in accordance herewith. Such genes include, for example, the cowpea trypsin inhibitor (CpTI; Hilder et al., Nature, 330:160-163, 1987) which may be used as a rootworm deterrent;

genes encoding avermectin (Avermectin and Abamectin., Campbell, W.C., Ed., 1989; Ikeda et al., J. Bacteriol., 169:5615-5621, 1987) which may prove particularly useful as a corn rootworm deterrent; ribosome inactivating protein genes; and even genes that regulate plant structures. Modified plants including anti insect antibody genes and genes that code for enzymes that can convert a non toxic insecticide (pro insecticide) applied to the outside of the plant into an insecticide inside the plant also are contemplated.

Polypeptides that may improve plant tolerance to effects of plant pests or pathogens include proteases, polypeptides involved in anthocyanin biosynthesis, polypeptides involved in cell wall metabolism, including cellulases, glucosidases, pectin methylesterase, pectinase, polygalacturonase, chitinase, chitosanase, and cellulose synthase, and polypeptides involved in biosynthesis of terpenoids or indole for production of bioactive metabolites to provide defense against herbivorous insects. It is also anticipated that combinations of different insect resistance genes on the same mini-chromosome will be particularly useful.

Vegetative Insecticidal Proteins (VIP) are a relatively new class of proteins originally found to be produced in the vegetative growth phase of the bacterium, *Bacillus cereus*, but do have a spectrum of insect lethality similar to the insecticidal genes found in strains of *Bacillus thuriengensis*. Both the vip1a and vip3A genes have been isolated and have demonstrated insect toxicity. It is anticipated that such genes may be used in modified plants to confer insect resistance ("Plants, Genes, and Crop Biotechnology" by Maarten J. Chrispeels and David E. Sadava (2003) Jones and Bartlett Press).

### (iii) *Environment or Stress Resistance*

Improvement of a plant's ability to tolerate various environmental stresses such as, but not limited to, drought, excess moisture, chilling, freezing, high temperature, salt, and oxidative stress, also can be effected through expression of novel genes. It is proposed that benefits may be realized in terms of increased resistance to freezing temperatures through the introduction of an "antifreeze" protein such as that of the Winter Flounder (Cutler et al., J. Plant Physiol., 135:351-354, 1989) or synthetic gene derivatives thereof. Improved chilling tolerance also may be conferred through increased expression of glycerol 3 phosphate acetyltransferase in



chloroplasts (Wolter et al., *The EMBO J.*, 4685-4692, 1992). Resistance to oxidative stress (often exacerbated by conditions such as chilling temperatures in combination with high light intensities) can be conferred by expression of superoxide dismutase (Gupta et al., 1993), and may be improved by glutathione reductase (Bowler et al., *Ann Rev. Plant Physiol.*, 43:83-116, 1992). Such strategies may allow for tolerance to freezing in newly emerged fields as well as extending later maturity higher yielding varieties to earlier relative maturity zones.

It is contemplated that the expression of novel genes that favorably affect plant water content, total water potential, osmotic potential, or turgor will enhance the ability of the plant to tolerate drought. As used herein, the terms "drought resistance" and "drought tolerance" are used to refer to a plant's increased resistance or tolerance to stress induced by a reduction in water availability, as compared to normal circumstances, and the ability of the plant to function and survive in lower water environments. In this aspect of the invention it is proposed, for example, that the expression of genes encoding for the biosynthesis of osmotically active solutes, such as polyol compounds, may impart protection against drought. Within this class are genes encoding for mannitol L phosphate dehydrogenase (Lee and Saier, 1982) and trehalose 6 phosphate synthase (Kaasen et al., *J. Bacteriology*, 174:889-898, 1992). Through the subsequent action of native phosphatases in the cell or by the introduction and coexpression of a specific phosphatase, these introduced genes will result in the accumulation of either mannitol or trehalose, respectively, both of which have been well documented as protective compounds able to mitigate the effects of stress. Mannitol accumulation in transgenic tobacco has been verified and preliminary results indicate that plants expressing high levels of this metabolite are able to tolerate an applied osmotic stress (Tarczynski et al., *Science*, 259:508-510, 1993, Tarczynski et al *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 89:1-5, 1993).

Similarly, the efficacy of other metabolites in protecting either enzyme function (e.g., alanopine or propionic acid) or membrane integrity (e.g., alanopine) has been documented (Loomis et al., *J. Expt. Zoology*, 252:9-15, 1989), and therefore expression of genes encoding for the biosynthesis of these compounds might confer drought resistance in a manner similar to or complimentary to mannitol. Other examples of naturally occurring metabolites that are osmotically active and/or provide some direct protective effect during drought and/or desiccation include fructose,

erythritol (Coxson et al., *Biotropica*, 24:121-133, 1992), sorbitol, dulcitol (Karsten et al., *Botanica Marina*, 35:11-19, 1992), glucosylglycerol (Reed et al., *J. Gen. Microbiology*, 130:1-4, 1984; Erdmann et al., *J. Gen. Microbiology*, 138:363-368, 1992), sucrose, stachyose (Koster and Leopold, *Plant Physiol.*, 88:829-832, 1988; Blackman et al., *Plant Physiol.*, 100:225-230, 1992), raffinose (Bernal Lugo and Leopold, *Plant Physiol.*, 98:1207-1210, 1992), proline (Rensburg et al., *J. Plant Physiol.*, 141:188-194, 1993), glycine betaine, ononitol and pinitol (Vernon and Bohnert, *The EMBO J.*, 11:2077-2085, 1992). Continued canopy growth and increased reproductive fitness during times of stress will be augmented by introduction and expression of genes such as those controlling the osmotically active compounds discussed above and other such compounds. Currently preferred genes which promote the synthesis of an osmotically active polyol compound are genes which encode the enzymes mannitol 1 phosphate dehydrogenase, trehalose 6 phosphate synthase and myoinositol O methyltransferase.

It is contemplated that the expression of specific proteins also may increase drought tolerance. Three classes of Late Embryogenic Proteins have been assigned based on structural similarities (see Dure et al., *Plant Molecular Biology*, 12:475-486, 1989). All three classes of LEAs have been demonstrated in maturing (e.g. desiccating) seeds. Within these 3 types of LEA proteins, the Type II (dehydrin type) have generally been implicated in drought and/or desiccation tolerance in vegetative plant parts (e.g. Mundy and Chua, *The EMBO J.*, 7:2279-2286, 1988; Piatkowski et al., *Plant Physiol.*, 94:1682-1688, 1990; Yamaguchi Shinozaki et al., *Plant Cell Physiol.*, 33:217-224, 1992). Expression of a Type III LEA (HVA 1) in tobacco was found to influence plant height, maturity and drought tolerance (Fitzpatrick, *Gen. Engineering News*, 22:7, 1993). In rice, expression of the HVA 1 gene influenced tolerance to water deficit and salinity (Xu et al., *Plant Physiol.*, 110:249-257, 1996). Expression of structural genes from any of the three LEA groups may therefore confer drought tolerance. Other types of proteins induced during water stress include thiol proteases, aldolases or transmembrane transporters (Guerrero et al., *Plant Molecular Biology*, 15:11-26, 1990), which may confer various protective and/or repair type functions during drought stress. It also is contemplated that genes that effect lipid biosynthesis and hence membrane composition might also be useful in conferring drought resistance on the plant.

Many of these genes for improving drought resistance have complementary modes of action. Thus, it is envisaged that combinations of these genes might have additive and/or synergistic effects in improving drought resistance in plants. Many of these genes also improve freezing tolerance (or resistance); the physical stresses incurred during freezing and drought are similar in nature and may be mitigated in similar fashion. Benefit may be conferred via constitutive expression of these genes, but the preferred means of expressing these novel genes may be through the use of a turgor induced promoter (such as the promoters for the turgor induced genes described in Guerrero et al., *Plant Molecular Biology*, 15:11-26, 1990 and Shagan et al., *Plant Physiol.*, 101:1397-1398, 1993 which are incorporated herein by reference). Spatial and temporal expression patterns of these genes may enable plants to better withstand stress.

It is proposed that expression of genes that are involved with specific morphological traits that allow for increased water extractions from drying soil would be of benefit. For example, introduction and expression of genes that alter root characteristics may enhance water uptake. It also is contemplated that expression of genes that enhance reproductive fitness during times of stress would be of significant value. For example, expression of genes that improve the synchrony of pollen shed and receptiveness of the female flower parts, e.g., silks, would be of benefit. In addition it is proposed that expression of genes that minimize kernel abortion during times of stress would increase the amount of grain to be harvested and hence be of value.

Given the overall role of water in determining yield, it is contemplated that enabling plants to utilize water more efficiently, through the introduction and expression of novel genes, will improve overall performance even when soil water availability is not limiting. By introducing genes that improve the ability of plants to maximize water usage across a full range of stresses relating to water availability, yield stability or consistency of yield performance may be realized.

Polypeptides that may improve stress tolerance under a variety of stress conditions include polypeptides involved in gene regulation, such as serine/threonine-protein kinases, MAP kinases, MAP kinase kinases, and MAP kinase kinase kinases; polypeptides that act as receptors for signal transduction and regulation, such as receptor protein kinases; intracellular signaling proteins, such as

protein phosphatases, GTP binding proteins, and phospholipid signaling proteins; polypeptides involved in arginine biosynthesis; polypeptides involved in ATP metabolism, including for example ATPase, adenylate transporters, and polypeptides involved in ATP synthesis and transport; polypeptides involved in glycine betaine, jasmonic acid, flavonoid or steroid biosynthesis; and hemoglobin. Enhanced or reduced activity of such polypeptides in modified plants will provide changes in the ability of a plant to respond to a variety of environmental stresses, such as chemical stress, drought stress and pest stress.

Other polypeptides that may improve plant tolerance to cold or freezing temperatures include polypeptides involved in biosynthesis of trehalose or raffinose, polypeptides encoded by cold induced genes, fatty acyl desaturases and other polypeptides involved in glycerolipid or membrane lipid biosynthesis, which find use in modification of membrane fatty acid composition, alternative oxidase, calcium-dependent protein kinases, LEA proteins or uncoupling protein.

Other polypeptides that may improve plant tolerance to heat include polypeptides involved in biosynthesis of trehalose, polypeptides involved in glycerolipid biosynthesis or membrane lipid metabolism (for altering membrane fatty acid composition), heat shock proteins or mitochondrial NDK.

Other polypeptides that may improve tolerance to extreme osmotic conditions include polypeptides involved in proline biosynthesis.

Other polypeptides that may improve plant tolerance to drought conditions include aquaporins, polypeptides involved in biosynthesis of trehalose or wax, LEA proteins or invertase.

*(iv) Disease Resistance*

It is proposed that increased resistance (or tolerance) to diseases may be realized through introduction of genes into plants, for example, into monocotyledonous plants such as maize. It is possible to produce resistance to diseases caused by viruses, viroids, bacteria, fungi and nematodes. It also is contemplated that control of mycotoxin producing organisms may be realized through expression of introduced genes. Resistance can be effected through suppression of endogenous factors that encourage disease-causing interactions, expression of

exogenous factors that are toxic to or otherwise provide protection from pathogens, or expression of factors that enhance the plant's own defense responses.

Resistance to viruses may be produced through expression of novel genes. For example, it has been demonstrated that expression of a viral coat protein in a modified plant can impart resistance to infection of the plant by that virus and perhaps other closely related viruses (Cuozzo et al., *Bio/Technology*, 6:549-553, 1988, Hemenway et al., *The EMBO J.*, 7:1273-1280, 1988, Abel et al., *Science*, 232:738-743, 1986). It is contemplated that expression of antisense genes targeted at essential viral functions may also impart resistance to viruses. For example, an antisense gene targeted at the gene responsible for replication of viral nucleic acid may inhibit replication and lead to resistance to the virus. It is believed that interference with other viral functions through the use of antisense genes also may increase resistance to viruses. Further, it is proposed that it may be possible to achieve resistance to viruses through other approaches, including, but not limited to the use of satellite viruses.

It is proposed that increased resistance to diseases caused by bacteria and fungi may be realized through introduction of novel genes. It is contemplated that genes encoding so called "peptide antibiotics," pathogenesis related (PR) proteins, toxin resistance, or proteins affecting host pathogen interactions such as morphological characteristics will be useful. Peptide antibiotics are polypeptide sequences which are inhibitory to growth of bacteria and other microorganisms. For example, the classes of peptides referred to as cecropins and magainins inhibit growth of many species of bacteria and fungi. It is proposed that expression of PR proteins in plants, for example, monocots such as maize, may be useful in conferring resistance to bacterial disease. These genes are induced following pathogen attack on a host plant and have been divided into at least five classes of proteins (Bol, Linthorst, and Cornelissen, 1990). Included amongst the PR proteins are beta 1, 3 glucanases, chitinases, and osmotin and other proteins that are believed to function in plant resistance to disease organisms. Other genes have been identified that have antifungal properties, e.g., UDA (stinging nettle lectin), or hevein (Broekaert et al., 1989; Barkai Golan et al., 1978). It is known that certain plant diseases are caused by the production of phytotoxins. It is proposed that resistance to these diseases would be achieved through expression of a novel gene that encodes an enzyme capable of

degrading or otherwise inactivating the phytotoxin. It also is contemplated that expression of novel genes that alter the interactions between the host plant and pathogen may be useful in reducing the ability of the disease organism to invade the tissues of the host plant, e.g., an increase in the waxiness of the leaf cuticle or other morphological characteristics.

Polypeptides useful for imparting improved disease responses to plants include polypeptides encoded by cercosporin induced genes, antifungal proteins and proteins encoded by R-genes or SAR genes.

Agronomically important diseases caused by fungal phytopathogens include: glume or leaf blotch, late blight, stalk/head rot, rice blast, leaf blight and spot, corn smut, wilt, sheath blight, stem canker, root rot, blackleg or kernel rot.

Exemplary plant viruses include tobacco or cucumber mosaic virus, ringspot virus, necrosis virus, maize dwarf mosaic virus, etc. Specific fungal, bacterial and viral pathogens of major crops include, but are not limited to:

RICE: rice brown spot fungus (*Cochliobolus miyabeanus*), rice blast fungus--*Magnaporthe grisea* (*Pyricularia grisea*), *Magnaporthe salvinii* (*Sclerotium oryzae*), *Xanthomomas oryzae* pv. *oryzae*, *Xanthomomas oryzae* pv. *oryzicola*, *Rhizoctonia* spp. (including but not limited to *Rhizoctonia solani*, *Rhizoctonia oryzae* and *Rhizoctonia oryzae-sativae*), *Pseudomonas* spp. (including but not limited to *Pseudomonas plantarii*, *Pseudomonas avenae*, *Pseudomonas glumae*, *Pseudomonas fuscovaginae*, *Pseudomonas alboprecipitans*, *Pseudomonas syringae* pv. *panici*, *Pseudomonas syringae* pv. *syringae*, *Pseudomonas syringae* pv. *oryzae* and *Pseudomonas syringae* pv. *aptata*), *Erwinia* spp. (including but not limited to *Erwinia herbicola*, *Erwinia amylovaora*, *Erwinia chrysanthemi* and *Erwinia carotovora*), *Achyla* spp. (including but not limited to *Achyla conspicua* and *Achyia klebsiana*), *Pythium* spp. (including but not limited to *Pythium dissotocum*, *Pythium irregulare*, *Pythium arrhenomanes*, *Pythium myriotylum*, *Pythium catenulatum*, *Pythium graminicola* and *Pythium spinosum*), *Saprolegnia* spp., *Dictyuchus* spp., *Pythiogeton* spp., *Phytophthora* spp., *Alternaria padwickii*, *Cochliobolus miyabeanus*, *Curvularia* spp. (including but not limited to *Curvularia lunata*, *Curvularia affinis*, *Curvularia clavata*, *Curvularia eragrostidis*, *Curvularia fallax*, *Curvularia geniculata*, *Curvularia inaequalis*, *Curvularia intermedia*, *Curvularia oryzae*, *Curvularia oryzae-sativae*,

*Curvularia pallescens*, *Curvularia senegalensis*, *Curvularia tuberculata*, *Curvularia uncinata* and *Curvularia verruculosa*), *Sarocladium oryzae*, *Gerlachia oryzae*, *Fusarium* spp. (including but not limited *Fusarium graminearum*, *Fusarium nivale* and to different pathovars of *Fusarium moniliforme*, including pvs. *fujikuroi* and *zeae*), *Sclerotium rolfsii*, *Phoma exigua*, *Mucor fragilis*, *Trichoderma viride*, *Rhizopus* spp., *Cercospora oryzae*, *Entyloma oryzae*, *Dreschlera gigantea*, *Scierophthora macrospora*, *Mycovellosiella oryzae*, *Phomopsis oryzae-sativae*, *Puccinia graminis*, *Uromyces coronatus*, *Cylindrocladium scoparium*, *Sarocladium oryzae*, *Gaeumannomyces graminis* pv. *graminis*, *Myrothecium verrucaria*, *Pyrenochaeta oryzae*, *Ustilaginoidea virens*, *Neovossia* spp. (including but not limited to *Neovossia horrida*), *Tilletia* spp., *Balansia oryzae-sativae*, *Phoma* spp. (including but not limited to *Phoma sorghina*, *Phoma insidiosa*, *Phoma glumarum*, *Phoma glumicola* and *Phoma oryzina*), *Nigrospora* spp. (including but not limited to *Nigrospora oryzae*, *Nigrospora sphaerica*, *Nigrospora panici* and *Nigrospora padwickii*), *Epiococcum nigrum*, *Phyllostica* spp., *Wolkia decolorans*, *Monascus purpureus*, *Aspergillus* spp., *Penicillium* spp., *Absidia* spp., *Mucor* spp., *Chaetomium* spp., *Dematium* spp., *Monilia* spp., *Streptomyces* spp., *Syncephalastrum* spp., *Verticillium* spp., *Nematospora coryli*, *Nakataea sigmoidea*, *Cladosporium* spp., *Bipolaris* spp., *Coniothyrium* spp., *Diplodia oryzae*, *Exserophilum rostratum*, *Helococera oryzae*, *Melanomma glumarum*, *Metashaeria* spp., *Mycosphaerella* spp., *Oidium* spp., *Pestalotia* spp., *Phaeoseptoria* spp., *Sphaeropsis* spp., *Trematosphaerella* spp., rice black-streaked dwarf virus, rice dwarf virus, rice gall dwarf virus, barley yellow dwarf virus, rice grassy stunt virus, rice hoja blanca virus, rice necrosis mosaic virus, rice ragged stunt virus, rice stripe virus, rice stripe necrosis virus, rice transitory yellowing virus, rice tungro bacilliform virus, rice tungro spherical virus, rice yellow mottle virus, rice tarsonemid mite virus, *Echinochloa* hoja blanca virus, *Echinochloa* ragged stunt virus, orange leaf mycoplasma-like organism, yellow dwarf mycoplasma-like organism, *Aphelenchoides besseyi*, *Ditylenchus angustus*, *Hirschmanniella* spp., *Criconemella* spp., *Meloidogyne* spp., *Heterodera* spp., *Pratylenchus* spp., *Hoplolaimus indicus*.

SOYBEANS: *Phytophthora sojae*, *Fusarium solani* f. sp. *Glycines*, *Macrophomina phaseolina*, *Fusarium*, *Pythium*, *Rhizoctonia*, *Phialophora gregata*, *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*, *Diaporthe phaseolorum* var. *sojae*, *Colletotrichum*

truncatum, *Phomopsis longicolla*, *Cercospora kikuchii*, *Diaporthe phaseolonum* var. *meridionalis* (and var. *caulivora*), *Phakopsora pachyrhizi*, *Fusarium solani*, *Microsphaera diffusa*, *Septoria glycines*, *Cercospora kikuchii*, *Macrophomina phaseolina*, *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*, *Corynespora cassiicola*, *Rhizoctonia solani*, *Cercospora sojae*, *Phytophthora megasperma* fsp. *glycinea*, *Macrophomina phaseolina*, *Fusarium oxysporum*, *Diaporthe phaseolorum* var. *sojae* (*Phomopsis sojae*), *Diaporthe phaseolorum* var. *caulivora*, *Sclerotium rolfsii*, *Cercospora kikuchii*, *Cercospora sojae*, *Peronospora manshurica*, *Colletotrichum dematium* (*Colletotrichum truncatum*), *Corynespora cassiicola*, *Phyllosticta sojicola*, *Alternaria alternata*, *Pseudomonas syringae* p.v. *glycinea*, *Xanthomonas campestris* p.v. *phaseoli*, *Microsphaera diffusa*, *Fusarium semitectum*, *Phialophora gregata*, Soybean mosaic virus, *Glomerella glycines*, Tobacco Ring spot virus, Tobacco Streak virus, *Phakopsora pachyrhizi*, *Pythium aphanidermatum*, *Pythium ultimum*, *Pythium debaryanum*, Tomato spotted wilted virus, *Heterodera glycines*, *Fusarium solani*, Soybean cyst and root knot nematodes.

CORN: *Fusarium moniliforme* var. *subglutinans*, *Erwinia stewartii*, *Fusarium moniliforme*, *Gibberella zeae* (*Fusarium Graminearum*), *Stenocarpella maydis* (*Diplodia maydis*), *Pythium irregulare*, *Pythium debaryanum*, *Pythium graminicola*, *Pythium splendens*, *Pythium ultimum*, *Pythium aphanidermatum*, *Aspergillus flavus*, *Bipolaris maydis* O, T (*cochliobolus heterostrophus*), *Helminthosporium carbonum* I, II, and III (*Cochliobolus carbonum*), *Exserohilum turcicum* I, II and III, *Helminthosporium pedicellatum*, *Physoderma maydis*, *Phyllosticta maydis*, *Kabatie-maydis*, *Cercospora sorghi*, *Ustilago maydis*, *Puccinia sorghi*, *Puccinia polysora*, *Macrophomina phaseolina*, *Penicillium oxalicum*, *Nigrospora oryzae*, *Cladosporium herbarum*, *Curvularia lunata*, *Curvularia inaequalis*, *Curvularia pallescens*, *Clavibacter michiganese* subsp. *Nebraskense*, *Trichoderma viride*, Maize dwarf Mosaic Virus A and B, Wheat Streak Mosaic Virus, Maize Chlorotic Dwarf Virus, *Claviceps sorghi*, *Pseudomonas avenae*, *Erwinia chrysantemi* p.v. *Zea*, *Erwinia corotovora*, *Cornstun spiroplasma*, *Diplodia macrospora*, *Sclerophthora macrospora*, *Peronosclerospora sorghi*, *Peronosclerospora philippinesis*, *Peronosclerospora maydis*, *Peronosclerospora sacchari*, *Spacelotheca reiliana*, *Physopella zeae*, *Cephalosporium maydis*, *Cephalosporium acremonium*,



Maize Chlorotic Mottle Virus, High Plains Virus, Maize Mosaic Virus, Maize Rayado Fino Virus, Maize Streak Virus, Maize Stripe Virus, Maize Rought Dwarf Virus:

WHEAT: *Pseudomonas syringae* p.v. *atrofaciens*, *Urocystis agropyri*, *Xanthomonas campestris* p.v. *translucens*, *Pseudomonas syringae* p.v. *syringae*, *Alternaria alternata*, *Cladosporium herbarum*, *Fusarium graminearum*, *Fusarium avenaceum*, *Fusarium culmorum*, *Ustilago tritici*, *Ascochyta tritici*, *Cephalosporium gramineum*, *Colletotrichum graminicola*, *Erysiphe graminis* f. sp. *Tritici*, *Puccinia graminis* f. sp. *Tritici*, *Puccinia recondite* f. sp. *tritici*, *puccinia striiformis*, *Pyrenophora tritici-repentis*, *Septoria nodorum*, *Septoria tritici*, *Spetoria avenae*, *Pseudocercospora herpotrichoides*, *Rhizoctonia solani*, *Rhizoctonia cerealis*, *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici*, *Pythium aphanidermatum*, *Pythium arrhenomanes*, *Pythium ultimum*, *Bipolaris sorokiniana*, Barley Yellow Dwarf Virus, Brome Mosaic Virus, Soil Borne Wheat Mosaic Virus, Wheat Streak Virus, Wheat Spindle Streak Virus, American Wheat Stripe Virus, *Claviceps purpurea*, *Tilletia tritici*, *Tilletia laevis*, *Pstilago tritici*, *Tilletia indica*, *Rhizoctonia solani*, *Pythium arrhenomannes*, *Pythium graminicola*, *Pythium aphanidermatum*, High Plains Virus, European Wheat Stripe Virus:

CANOLA: *Albugo candida*, *Alternaria brassicae*, *Leptosphaeria maculans*, *Rhizoctonia solani*, *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*, *Mycosphaerella brassicicola*, *Pythium ultimum*, *Peronospora parasitica*, *Fusarium roseum*, *Fusarium oxysporum*, *Tilletia foetida*, *Tilletia caries*, *Alternaria alternata*:

SUNFLOWER: *Plasmophora halstedii*, *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*, Aster Yellows, *Septoria helianthi*, *Phomopsis helianthi*, *Alternaria helianthi*, *Alternaria zinniae*, *Botrytis cinerea*, *Phoma macdonaldii*, *Macrophomina phaseolina*, *Erysiphe cichoracearum*, *Phizopus oryzae*, *Rhizopus arrhizus*, *Rhizopus stolonifer*, *Puccinia helianthi*, *Verticillium Dahliae*, *Erwinia carotovorum* p.v. *carotovora*, *Cephalosporium acremonium*, *Phytophthora cryptogea*, *Albugo tragopogonis*.

SORGHUM: *Exserohilum turcicum*, *Colletotrichum graminicola* (*Glomerella graminicola*), *Cercospora sorghi*, *Gloeocercospora sorghi*, *Ascochyta sorghi*, *Pseudomonas syringae* p.v. *syringae*, *Xanthomonas campestris* p.v. *holcicola*, *Pseudomonas andropogonis*, *Puccinia purpurea*, *Macrophomina phaseolina*, *Periconia circinata*, *Fusarium moniliforme*, *Alternaria alternate*, *Bipolaris sorghicola*,

Helminthosporium sorghicola, Curvularia lunata, Phoma insidiosa, Pseudomonas avenae (Pseudomonas alboprecipitans), Ramulispora sorghi, Ramulispora sorghicola, Phyllachara sacchari Sporisorium relianum (Sphacelotheca reliana), Sphacelotheca cruenta, Sporisorium sorghi, Sugarcane mosaic H, Maize Dwarf Mosaic Virus A & B, Claviceps sorghi, Rhizoctonia solani, Acremonium strictum, Sclerophthora macrospora, Peronosclerospora sorghi, Peronosclerospora philippinensis, Sclerospora graminicola, Fusarium graminearum, Fusarium Oxysporum, Pythium arrhenomanes, Pythium graminicola.

ALFALFA: Clavibacter michiganensis subsp. insidiosum, Pythium ultimum, Pythium irregulare, Pythium splendens, Pythium debaryanum, Pythium aphanidermatum, Phytophthora megasperma, Peronospora trifoliorum, Phoma medicaginis var. medicaginis, Cercospora medicaginis, Pseudopeziza medicaginis, Leptotrochila medicaginis, Fusarium oxysporum, Rhizoctonia solani, Uromyces striatus, Colletotrichum trifolii race 1 and race 2, Leptosphaerulina briosiana, Stemphylium botryosum, Stagonospora meliloti, Sclerotinia trifoliorum, Alfalfa Mosaic Virus, Verticillium albo-atrum, Xanthomonas campestris p.v. alfalfae, Aphanomyces euteiches, Stemphylium herbarum, Stemphylium alfalfae.

(v) *Plant Agronomic Characteristics*

Two of the factors determining where crop plants can be grown are the average daily temperature during the growing season and the length of time between frosts. Within the areas where it is possible to grow a particular crop, there are varying limitations on the maximal time it is allowed to grow to maturity and be harvested. For example, a variety to be grown in a particular area is selected for its ability to mature and dry down to harvestable moisture content within the required period of time with maximum possible yield. Therefore, crops of varying maturities are developed for different growing locations. Apart from the need to dry down sufficiently to permit harvest, it is desirable to have maximal drying take place in the field to minimize the amount of energy required for additional drying post harvest. Also, the more readily a product such as grain can dry down, the more time there is available for growth and kernel fill. It is considered that genes that influence maturity and/or dry down can be identified and introduced into plant lines using transformation techniques to create new varieties adapted to different growing locations or the same growing location, but having improved yield to moisture ratio at harvest. Expression

of genes that are involved in regulation of plant development may be especially useful.

It is contemplated that genes may be introduced into plants that would improve standability and other plant growth characteristics. Expression of novel genes in plants which confer stronger stalks, improved root systems, or prevent or reduce ear droppage or shattering would be of great value to the farmer. It is proposed that introduction and expression of genes that increase the total amount of photoassimilate available by, for example, increasing light distribution and/or interception would be advantageous. In addition, the expression of genes that increase the efficiency of photosynthesis and/or the leaf canopy would further increase gains in productivity. It is contemplated that expression of a phytochrome gene in crop plants may be advantageous. Expression of such a gene may reduce apical dominance, confer semidwarfism on a plant, or increase shade tolerance (U.S. Patent No. 5,268,526). Such approaches would allow for increased plant populations in the field.

(vi) *Nutrient Utilization*

The ability to utilize available nutrients may be a limiting factor in growth of crop plants. It is proposed that it would be possible to alter nutrient uptake, tolerate pH extremes, mobilization through the plant, storage pools, and availability for metabolic activities by the introduction of novel genes. These modifications would allow a plant, for example, maize to more efficiently utilize available nutrients. It is contemplated that an increase in the activity of, for example, an enzyme that is normally present in the plant and involved in nutrient utilization would increase the availability of a nutrient or decrease the availability of an antinutritive factor. An example of such an enzyme would be phytase. It is further contemplated that enhanced nitrogen utilization by a plant is desirable. Expression of a glutamate dehydrogenase gene in plants, e.g., *E. coli* *gdhA* genes, may lead to increased fixation of nitrogen in organic compounds. Furthermore, expression of *gdhA* in plants may lead to enhanced resistance to the herbicide glufosinate by incorporation of excess ammonia into glutamate, thereby detoxifying the ammonia. It also is contemplated that expression of a novel gene may make a nutrient source available that was previously not accessible, e.g., an enzyme that releases a component of nutrient value from a more complex molecule, perhaps a macromolecule.

Polypeptides useful for improving nitrogen flow, sensing, uptake, storage and/or transport include those involved in aspartate, glutamine or glutamate biosynthesis, polypeptides involved in aspartate, glutamine or glutamate transport, polypeptides associated with the TOR (Target of Rapamycin) pathway, nitrate transporters, nitrate reductases, amino transferases, ammonium transporters, chlorate transporters or polypeptides involved in tetrapyrrole biosynthesis.

Polypeptides useful for increasing the rate of photosynthesis include phytochrome, ribulose biphosphate carboxylase-oxygenase, Rubisco activase, photosystem I and II proteins, electron carriers, ATP synthase, NADH dehydrogenase or cytochrome oxidase.

Polypeptides useful for increasing phosphorus uptake, transport or utilization include phosphatases or phosphate transporters.

*(vii) Male Sterility*

Male sterility is useful in the production of hybrid seed. It is proposed that male sterility may be produced through expression of novel genes. For example, it has been shown that expression of genes that encode proteins, RNAs, or peptides that interfere with development of the male inflorescence and/or gametophyte result in male sterility. Chimeric ribonuclease genes that express in the anthers of transgenic tobacco and oilseed rape have been demonstrated to lead to male sterility (Mariani et al., Nature, 347:737-741, 1990).

A number of mutations were discovered in maize that confer cytoplasmic male sterility. One mutation in particular, referred to as T cytoplasm, also correlates with sensitivity to Southern corn leaf blight. A DNA sequence, designated TURF 13 (Levings, Science, 250:942-947, 1990), was identified that correlates with T cytoplasm. It is proposed that it would be possible through the introduction of TURF 13 via transformation, to separate male sterility from disease sensitivity. As it is necessary to be able to restore male fertility for breeding purposes and for grain production, it is proposed that genes encoding restoration of male fertility also may be introduced.

*(viii) Altered Nutritional Content*

Genes may be introduced into plants to improve or alter the nutrient quality or content of a particular crop. Introduction of genes that alter the nutrient

composition of a crop may greatly enhance the feed or food value. For example, the protein of many grains is suboptimal for feed and food purposes, especially when fed to pigs, poultry, and humans. The protein is deficient in several amino acids that are essential in the diet of these species, requiring the addition of supplements to the grain. Limiting essential amino acids may include lysine, methionine, tryptophan, threonine, valine, arginine, and histidine. Some amino acids become limiting only after corn is supplemented with other inputs for feed formulations. The levels of these essential amino acids in seeds and grain may be elevated by mechanisms which include, but are not limited to, the introduction of genes to increase the biosynthesis of the amino acids, decrease the degradation of the amino acids, increase the storage of the amino acids in proteins, or increase transport of the amino acids to the seeds or grain.

Polypeptides useful for providing increased seed protein quantity and/or quality include polypeptides involved in the metabolism of amino acids in plants, particularly polypeptides involved in biosynthesis of methionine/cysteine and lysine, amino acid transporters, amino acid efflux carriers, seed storage proteins, proteases, or polypeptides involved in phytic acid metabolism.

The protein composition of a crop may be altered to improve the balance of amino acids in a variety of ways including elevating expression of native proteins, decreasing expression of those with poor composition, changing the composition of native proteins, or introducing genes encoding entirely new proteins possessing superior composition.

The introduction of genes that alter the oil content of a crop plant may also be of value. Increases in oil content may result in increases in metabolizable-energy-content and density of the seeds for use in feed and food. The introduced genes may encode enzymes that remove or reduce rate-limitations or regulated steps in fatty acid or lipid biosynthesis. Such genes may include, but are not limited to, those that encode acetyl-CoA carboxylase, ACP-acyltransferase, alpha-ketoacyl-ACP synthase, or other well known fatty acid biosynthetic activities. Other possibilities are genes that encode proteins that do not possess enzymatic activity such as acyl carrier protein. Genes may be introduced that alter the balance of fatty acids present in the oil providing a more healthful or nutritive feedstuff. The introduced DNA also may

encode sequences that block expression of enzymes involved in fatty acid biosynthesis, altering the proportions of fatty acids present in crops.

Genes may be introduced that enhance the nutritive value of crops, or of foods derived from crops by increasing the level of naturally occurring phytosterols, or by encoding for proteins to enable the synthesis of phytosterols in crops. The phytosterols from these crops can be processed directly into foods, or extracted and used to manufacture food products.

Genes may be introduced that enhance the nutritive value of the starch component of crops, for example by increasing the degree of branching, resulting in improved utilization of the starch in livestock by delaying its metabolism. Additionally, other major constituents of a crop may be altered, including genes that affect a variety of other nutritive, processing, or other quality aspects. For example, pigmentation may be increased or decreased.

Carbohydrate metabolism may be altered, for example by increased sucrose production and/or transport. Polypeptides useful for affecting carbohydrate metabolism include polypeptides involved in sucrose or starch metabolism, carbon assimilation or carbohydrate transport, including, for example sucrose transporters or glucose/hexose transporters, enzymes involved in glycolysis/gluconeogenesis, the pentose phosphate cycle, or raffinose biosynthesis, or polypeptides involved in glucose signaling, such as SNF1 complex proteins.

Feed or food crops may also possess sub-optimal quantities of vitamins, antioxidants or other nutraceuticals, requiring supplementation to provide adequate nutritive value and ideal health value. Introduction of genes that enhance vitamin biosynthesis may be envisioned including, for example, vitamins A, E, B12, choline, or the like. Mineral content may also be sub-optimal. Thus genes that affect the accumulation or availability of compounds containing phosphorus, sulfur, calcium, manganese, zinc, or iron among others would be valuable.

Numerous other examples of improvements of crops may be used with the invention. The improvements may not necessarily involve grain, but may, for example, improve the value of a crop for silage. Introduction of DNA to accomplish this might include sequences that alter lignin production such as those that result in the "brown midrib" phenotype associated with superior feed value for cattle. Other

genes may encode for enzymes that alter the structure of extracellular carbohydrates in the stover, or that facilitate the degradation of the carbohydrates in the non-grain portion of the crop so that it can be efficiently fermented into ethanol or other useful carbohydrates.

It may be desirable to modify the nutritional content of plants by reducing undesirable components such as fats, starches, etc. This may be done, for example, by the use of exogenous nucleic acids that encode enzymes which increase plant use or metabolism of such components so that they are present at lower quantities. Alternatively, it may be done by use of exogenous nucleic acids that reduce expression levels or activity of native plant enzymes that synthesize such components.

Likewise the elimination of certain undesirable traits may improve the food or feed value of the crop. Many undesirable traits must currently be eliminated by special post-harvest processing steps and the degree to which these can be engineered into the plant prior to harvest and processing would provide significant value. Examples of such traits are the elimination of anti-nutritionals such as phytates and phenolic compounds which are commonly found in many crop species. Also, the reduction of fats, carbohydrates and certain phytohormones may be valuable for the food and feed industries as they may allow a more efficient mechanism to meet specific dietary requirements.

In addition to direct improvements in feed or food value, genes also may be introduced which improve the processing of crops and improve the value of the products resulting from the processing. One use of crops is via wetmilling. Thus novel genes that increase the efficiency and reduce the cost of such processing, for example by decreasing steeping time, may also find use. Improving the value of wetmilling products may include altering the quantity or quality of starch, oil, corn gluten meal, or the components of gluten feed. Elevation of starch may be achieved through the identification and elimination of rate limiting steps in starch biosynthesis by expressing increased amounts of enzymes involved in biosynthesis or by decreasing levels of the other components of crops resulting in proportional increases in starch.

Oil is another product of wetmilling, the value of which may be improved by introduction and expression of genes. Oil properties may be altered to improve its performance in the production and use of cooking oil, shortenings, lubricants or other oil-derived products or improvement of its health attributes when used in the food-related applications. Novel fatty acids also may be synthesized which upon extraction can serve as starting materials for chemical syntheses. The changes in oil properties may be achieved by altering the type, level, or lipid arrangement of the fatty acids present in the oil. This in turn may be accomplished by the addition of genes that encode enzymes that catalyze the synthesis of novel fatty acids (e.g. fatty acid elongases, desaturases) and the lipids possessing them or by increasing levels of native fatty acids while possibly reducing levels of precursors or breakdown products. Alternatively, DNA sequences may be introduced which slow or block steps in fatty acid biosynthesis resulting in the increase in precursor fatty acid intermediates. Genes that might be added include desaturases, epoxidases, hydratases, dehydratases, or other enzymes that catalyze reactions involving fatty acid intermediates. Representative examples of catalytic steps that might be blocked include the desaturations from stearic to oleic acid or oleic to linolenic acid resulting in the respective accumulations of stearic and oleic acids. Another example is the blockage of elongation steps resulting in the accumulation of C8 to C12 saturated fatty acids.

Polypeptides useful for providing increased seed oil quantity and/or quality include polypeptides involved in fatty acid and glycerolipid biosynthesis, beta-oxidation enzymes, enzymes involved in biosynthesis of nutritional compounds, such as carotenoids and tocopherols, or polypeptides that increase embryo size or number or thickness of aleurone.

Polypeptides involved in production of galactomannans or arabinogalactans are of interest for providing plants having increased and/or modified reserve polysaccharides for use in food, pharmaceutical, cosmetic, paper and paint industries.

Polypeptides involved in modification of flavonoid/isoflavonoid metabolism in plants include cinnamate-4-hydroxylase, chalcone synthase or flavones synthase. Enhanced or reduced activity of such polypeptides in modified plants will provide changes in the quantity and/or speed of flavonoid metabolism in plants and



may improve disease resistance by enhancing synthesis of protective secondary metabolites or improving signaling pathways governing disease resistance.

Polypeptides involved in lignin biosynthesis are of interest for increasing plants' resistance to lodging and for increasing the usefulness of plant materials as bafouls.

(ix) *Production or Assimilation of Chemicals or Biological*

It may further be considered that a modified plant prepared in accordance with the invention may be used for the production or manufacturing of useful biological compounds that were either not produced at all, or not produced at the same level, in the corn plant previously. Alternatively, plants produced in accordance with the invention may be made to metabolize or absorb and concentrate certain compounds, such as hazardous wastes, thereby allowing bioremediation of these compounds.

The novel plants producing these compounds are made possible by the introduction and expression of one or potentially many genes with the constructs provided by the invention. The vast array of possibilities include but are not limited to any biological compound which is presently produced by any organism such as proteins, nucleic acids, primary and intermediary metabolites, carbohydrate polymers, enzymes for uses in bioremediation, enzymes for modifying pathways that produce secondary plant metabolites such as falconoid or vitamins, enzymes that could produce pharmaceuticals, and for introducing enzymes that could produce compounds of interest to the manufacturing industry such as specialty chemicals and plastics. The compounds may be produced by the plant, extracted upon harvest and/or processing, and used for any presently recognized useful purpose such as pharmaceuticals, fragrances, and industrial enzymes to name a few.

(x) *Other characteristics*

Cell cycle modification: Polypeptides encoding cell cycle enzymes and regulators of the cell cycle pathway are useful for manipulating growth rate in plants to provide early vigor and accelerated maturation. Improvements in quality traits, such as seed oil content, may also be obtained by expression of cell cycle enzymes and cell cycle regulators. Polypeptides of interest for modification of cell cycle pathway include cycling and EIF5alpha pathway proteins, polypeptides involved in

polyamine metabolism, polypeptides which act as regulators of the cell cycle pathway, including cyclin-dependent kinases (CDKs), CDK-activating kinases, cell cycle-dependent phosphatases, CDK-inhibitors, Rb and Rb-binding proteins, or transcription factors that activate genes involved in cell proliferation and division, such as the E2F family of transcription factors, proteins involved in degradation of cyclins, such as cullins, and plant homologs of tumor suppressor polypeptides.

Plant growth regulators: Polypeptides involved in production of substances that regulate the growth of various plant tissues are of interest in the present invention and may be used to provide modified plants having altered morphologies and improved plant growth and development profiles leading to improvements in yield and stress response. Of particular interest are polypeptides involved in the biosynthesis, or degradation of plant growth hormones, such as gibberellins, brassinosteroids, cytokinins, auxins, ethylene or abscisic acid, and other proteins involved in the activity, uptake and/or transport of such polypeptides, including for example, cytokinin oxidase, cytokinin/purine permeases, F-box proteins, G-proteins or phytosulfokines.

Transcription factors in plants: Transcription factors play a key role in plant growth and development by controlling the expression of one or more genes in temporal, spatial and physiological specific patterns. Enhanced or reduced activity of such polypeptides in modified plants will provide significant changes in gene transcription patterns and provide a variety of beneficial effects in plant growth, development and response to environmental conditions. Transcription factors of interest include, but are not limited to myb transcription factors, including helix-turn-helix proteins, homeodomain transcription factors, leucine zipper transcription factors, MADS transcription factors, transcription factors having AP2 domains, zinc finger transcription factors, CCAAT binding transcription factors, ethylene responsive transcription factors, transcription initiation factors or UV damaged DNA binding proteins.

Homologous recombination: Increasing the rate of homologous recombination in plants is useful for accelerating the introgression of transgenes into breeding varieties by backcrossing, and to enhance the conventional breeding process by allowing rare recombinants between closely linked genes in phase repulsion to be identified more easily. Polypeptides useful for expression in plants to provide

increased homologous recombination include polypeptides involved in mitosis and/or meiosis, DNA replication, nucleic acid metabolism, DNA repair pathways or homologous recombination pathways including for example, recombinases, nucleases, proteins binding to DNA double-strand breaks, single-strand DNA binding proteins, strand-exchange proteins, resolvases, ligases, helicases and polypeptide members of the RAD52 epistasis group.

#### **Non-Protein-Expressing Exogenous Nucleic Acids**

Plants with decreased expression of a gene of interest can also be achieved, for example, by expression of antisense nucleic acids, dsRNA or RNAi, catalytic RNA such as ribozymes, sense expression constructs that exhibit cosuppression effects, aptamers or zinc finger proteins.

Antisense RNA reduces production of the polypeptide product of the target messenger RNA, for example by blocking translation through formation of RNA:RNA duplexes or by inducing degradation of the target mRNA. Antisense approaches are a way of preventing or reducing gene function by targeting the genetic material as disclosed in U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,801,540; 5,107,065; 5,759,829; 5,910,444; 6,184,439; and 6,198,026, all of which are incorporated herein by reference. In one approach, an antisense gene sequence is introduced that is transcribed into antisense RNA that is complementary to the target mRNA. For example, part or all of the normal gene sequences are placed under a promoter in inverted orientation so that the 'wrong' or complementary strand is transcribed into a non-protein expressing antisense RNA. The promoter used for the antisense gene may influence the level, timing, tissue, specificity, or inducibility of the antisense inhibition.

Autonomous mini-chromosomes may contain exogenous DNA bounded by recombination sites, for example lox-P sites, that can be recognized by a recombinase, e.g. Cre, and removed from the mini-chromosome. In cases where there is a homologous recombination site or sites in the host genomic DNA, the exogenous DNA excised the mini-chromosome may be integrated into the genome at one of the specific recombination sites and the DNA bounded by the recombination sites will become integrated into the host DNA. The use of a mini-chromosome as a platform for DNA excision or for launching such DNA integration into the host genome may include in vivo induction of the expression of a recombinase encoded in the genomic DNA of a transgenic host, or in a mini-chromosome or other episome.

RNAi gene suppression in plants by transcription of a dsRNA is described in U.S. Pat. No. 6,506,559, U.S. patent application Publication No. 2002/0168707, WO 98/53083, WO 99/53050 and WO 99/61631, all of which are incorporated herein by reference. The double-stranded RNA or RNAi constructs can trigger the sequence-specific degradation of the target messenger RNA. Suppression of a gene by RNAi can be achieved using a recombinant DNA construct having a promoter operably linked to a DNA element comprising a sense and anti-sense element of a segment of genomic DNA of the gene, e.g., a segment of at least about 23 nucleotides, more preferably about 50 to 200 nucleotides where the sense and anti-sense DNA components can be directly linked or joined by an intron or artificial DNA segment that can form a loop when the transcribed RNA hybridizes to form a hairpin structure.

Catalytic RNA molecules or ribozymes can also be used to inhibit expression of the target gene or genes or facilitate molecular reactions. Ribozymes are targeted to a given sequence by hybridization of sequences within the ribozyme to the target mRNA. Two stretches of homology are required for this targeting, and these stretches of homologous sequences flank the catalytic ribozyme structure. It is possible to design ribozymes that specifically pair with virtually any target mRNA and cleave the target mRNA at a specific location, thereby inactivating it. A number of classes of ribozymes have been identified. One class of ribozymes is derived from a number of small circular RNAs that are capable of self-cleavage and replication in plants. The RNAs replicate either alone (viroid RNAs) or with a helper virus (satellite RNAs). Examples include Tobacco Ringspot Virus (Prody *et al.*, *Science*, 231:1577-1580, 1986), Avocado Sunblotch Viroid (Palukaitis *et al.*, *Virology*, 99:145-151, 1979; Symons, *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 9:6527-6537, 1981), and Lucerne Transient Streak Virus (Forster and Symons, *Cell*, 49:211-220, 1987), and the satellite RNAs from velvet tobacco mottle virus, Solanum nodiflorum mottle virus and subterranean clover mottle virus. The design and use of target RNA-specific ribozymes is described in Haseloff, *et al.*, *Nature* 334:585-591 (1988). Several different ribozyme motifs have been described with RNA cleavage activity (Symons, *Annu. Rev. Biochem.*, 61:641-671, 1992). Other suitable ribozymes include sequences from RNase P with RNA cleavage activity (Yuan *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 89:8006-8010, 1992; Yuan and Altman, *Science*, 263:1269-1273, 1994; U.

S. Patents 5,168,053 and 5,624,824), hairpin ribozyme structures (Berzal-Herranz *et al.*, *Genes and Devel.*, 6:129-134, 1992; Chowrira *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 269:25856-25864, 1994) and Hepatitis Delta virus based ribozymes (U. S. Patent 5,625,047). The general design and optimization of ribozyme directed RNA cleavage activity has been discussed in detail (Haseloff and Gerlach, 1988, *Nature*. 1988 Aug 18;334(6183):585-91, Chowrira *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 269:25856-25864, 1994).

Another method of reducing protein expression utilizes the phenomenon of cosuppression or gene silencing (for example, U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,063,947; 5,686,649; or 5,283,184; each of which is incorporated herein by reference). Cosuppression of an endogenous gene using a full-length cDNA sequence as well as a partial cDNA sequence are known (for example, Napoli *et al.*, *Plant Cell* 2:279-289 [1990]; van der Krol *et al.*, *Plant Cell* 2:291-299 [1990]; Smith *et al.*, *Mol. Gen. Genetics* 224:477-481 [1990]). The phenomenon of cosuppression has also been used to inhibit plant target genes in a tissue-specific manner.

In some embodiments, nucleic acids from one species of plant are expressed in another species of plant to effect cosuppression of a homologous gene. The introduced sequence generally will be substantially identical to the endogenous sequence intended to be repressed, for example, about 65%, 80%, 85%, 90%, or preferably 95% or greater identical. Higher identity may result in a more effective repression of expression of the endogenous sequence. A higher identity in a shorter than full length sequence compensates for a longer, less identical sequence. Furthermore, the introduced sequence need not have the same intron or exon pattern, and identity of non-coding segments will be equally effective. Generally, where inhibition of expression is desired, some transcription of the introduced sequence occurs. The effect may occur where the introduced sequence contains no coding sequence per se, but only intron or untranslated sequences homologous to sequences present in the primary transcript of the endogenous sequence.

Yet another method of reducing protein activity is by expressing nucleic acid ligands, so-called aptamers, which specifically bind to the protein. Aptamers may be obtained by the SELEX (Systematic Evolution of Ligands by EXponential Enrichment) method. See U.S. Pat. No. 5,270,163, incorporated herein by reference. In the SELEX method, a candidate mixture of single stranded nucleic

acids having regions of randomized sequence is contacted with the protein and those nucleic acids having an increased affinity to the target are selected and amplified. After several iterations a nucleic acid with optimal affinity to the polypeptide is obtained and is used for expression in modified plants.

A zinc finger protein that binds a polypeptide-encoding sequence or its regulatory region is also used to alter expression of the nucleotide sequence. Transcription of the nucleotide sequence may be reduced or increased. Zinc finger proteins are, for example, described in Beerli et al. (1998) PNAS 95:14628-14633., or in WO 95/19431, WO 98/54311, or WO 96/06166, all incorporated herein by reference.

Other examples of non-protein expressing sequences specifically envisioned for use with the invention include tRNA sequences, for example, to alter codon usage, and rRNA variants, for example, which may confer resistance to various agents such as antibiotics.

It is contemplated that unexpressed DNA sequences, including novel synthetic sequences, could be introduced into cells as proprietary "labels" of those cells and plants and seeds thereof. It would not be necessary for a label DNA element to disrupt the function of a gene endogenous to the host organism, as the sole function of this DNA would be to identify the origin of the organism. For example, one could introduce a unique DNA sequence into a plant and this DNA element would identify all cells, plants, and progeny of these cells as having arisen from that labeled source. It is proposed that inclusion of label DNAs would enable one to distinguish proprietary germplasm or germplasm derived from such, from unlabelled germplasm.

#### **Exemplary plant promoters, regulatory sequences and targeting sequences**

Exemplary classes of plant promoters are described below.

Constitutive Expression promoters: Exemplary constitutive expression promoters include the ubiquitin promoter (e.g., sunflower--Binet et al. Plant Science 79: 87-94 (1991); maize--Christensen et al. Plant Molec. Biol. 12: 619-632 (1989); and Arabidopsis--Callis et al., J. Biol. Chem. 265: 12486-12493 (1990) and Norris et al., Plant Mol. Biol. 21: 895-906 (1993)); the CaMV 35S promoter (U.S. Patent Nos. 5,858,742 and 5,322,938); or the actin promoter (e.g., rice-- U.S. Pat. No. 5,641,876;

McElroy et al. *Plant Cell* 2: 163-171 (1990), McElroy et al. *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 231: 150-160 (1991), and Chibbar et al. *Plant Cell Rep.* 12: 506-509 (1993)).

Inducible Expression promoters: Exemplary inducible expression promoters include the chemically regulatable tobacco PR-1 promoter (e.g., tobacco-- U.S. Pat. No. 5,614,395; Arabidopsis--Lebel et al., *Plant J.* 16: 223-233 (1998); maize- U.S. Pat. No. 6,429,362). Various chemical regulators may be employed to induce expression, including the benzothiadiazole, isonicotinic acid, and salicylic acid compounds disclosed in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,523,311 and 5,614,395. Other promoters inducible by certain alcohols or ketones, such as ethanol, include, for example, the *alcA* gene promoter from *Aspergillus nidulans* (Caddick et al. (1998) *Nat. Biotechnol* 16:177-180). A glucocorticoid-mediated induction system is described in Aoyama and Chua (1997) *The Plant Journal* 11: 605-612 wherein gene expression is induced by application of a glucocorticoid, for example a dexamethasone. Another class of useful promoters are water-deficit-inducible promoters, e.g. promoters which are derived from the 5' regulatory region of genes identified as a heat shock protein 17.5 gene (HSP 17.5), an HVA22 gene (HVA22), and a cinnamic acid 4-hydroxylase (CA4H) gene (CA4H) of *Zea mays*. Another water-deficit-inducible promoter is derived from the *rab-17* promoter as disclosed by Vilardell et al., *Plant Molecular Biology*, 17(5):985-993, 1990. See also U.S. Pat. No. 6,084,089 which discloses cold inducible promoters, U.S. Pat. No. 6,294,714 which discloses light inducible promoters, U.S. Pat. No. 6,140,078 which discloses salt inducible promoters, U.S. Pat. No. 6,252,138 which discloses pathogen inducible promoters, and U.S. Pat. No. 6,175,060 which discloses phosphorus deficiency inducible promoters.

As another example, numerous wound-inducible promoters have been described (e.g. Xu et al. *Plant Molec. Biol.* 22: 573-588 (1993), Logemann et al. *Plant Cell* 1: 151-158 (1989), Rohrmeier & Lehle, *Plant Molec. Biol.* 22: 783-792 (1993), Firek et al. *Plant Molec. Biol.* 22: 129-142 (1993), Warner et al. *Plant J.* 3: 191-201 (1993)). Logemann describe 5' upstream sequences of the potato *wun1* gene. Xu et al. show that a wound-inducible promoter from the dicotyledon potato (*pin2*) is active in the monocotyledon rice. Rohrmeier & Lehle describe maize *Wip1* cDNA which is wound induced and which can be used to isolate the cognate promoter. Firek et al. and Warner et al. have described a wound-induced gene from the monocotyledon *Asparagus officinalis*, which is expressed at local wound and pathogen invasion sites.

**Tissue-Specific Promoters:** Exemplary promoters that express genes only in certain tissues are useful according to the present invention. For example root specific expression may be attained using the promoter of the maize metallothionein-like (MTL) gene described by de Framond (FEBS 290: 103-106 (1991)) and also in U.S. Pat. No. 5,466,785, incorporated herein by reference. U.S. Pat. No. 5,837,848 discloses a root specific promoter. Another exemplary promoter confers pith-preferred expression (see Int'l. Pub. No. WO 93/07278, herein incorporated by reference, which describes the maize *trpA* gene and promoter that is preferentially expressed in pith cells). Leaf-specific expression may be attained, for example, by using the promoter for a maize gene encoding phosphoenol carboxylase (PEPC) (see Hudspeth & Grula, *Plant Molec Biol* 12: 579-589 (1989)). Pollen-specific expression may be conferred by the promoter for the maize calcium-dependent protein kinase (CDPK) gene which is expressed in pollen cells (WO 93/07278). U.S. Pat. Appl. Pub. No. 20040016025 describes tissue-specific promoters. Pollen-specific expression may be conferred by the tomato LAT52 pollen-specific promoter (Bate et. al., *Plan mol Biol*. 1998 Jul;37(5):859-69).

See also U.S. Pat. No. 6,437,217 which discloses a root-specific maize RS81 promoter, U.S. Pat. No. 6,426,446 which discloses a root specific maize RS324 promoter, U.S. Pat. No. 6,232,526 which discloses a constitutive maize A3 promoter, U.S. Pat. No. 6,177,611 which discloses constitutive maize promoters, U.S. Pat. No. 6,433,252 which discloses a maize L3 oleosin promoter that are aleurone and seed coat-specific promoters, U.S. Pat. No. 6,429,357 which discloses a constitutive rice actin 2 promoter and intron, U.S. patent application Pub. No. 20040216189 which discloses an inducible constitutive leaf specific maize chloroplast aldolase promoter.

Optionally a plant transcriptional terminator can be used in place of the plant-expressed gene native transcriptional terminator. Exemplary transcriptional terminators are those that are known to function in plants and include the CaMV 35S terminator, the *tml* terminator, the nopaline synthase terminator and the pea *rbcS* E9 terminator. These can be used in both monocotyledons and dicotyledons.

Various intron sequences have been shown to enhance expression, particularly in monocotyledonous cells. For example, the introns of the maize *Adhl* gene have been found to significantly enhance expression. Intron 1 was found to be particularly effective and enhanced expression in fusion constructs with the



chloramphenicol acetyltransferase gene (Callis *et al.*, Genes Develop. 1: 1183-1200 (1987)). The intron from the maize bronzel gene also enhances expression. Intron sequences have been routinely incorporated into plant transformation vectors, typically within the non-translated leader. U.S. Patent Application Publication 2002/0192813 discloses 5', 3' and intron elements useful in the design of effective plant expression vectors.

A number of non-translated leader sequences derived from viruses are also known to enhance expression, and these are particularly effective in dicotyledonous cells. Specifically, leader sequences from Tobacco Mosaic Virus (TMV, the "omega-sequence"), Maize Chlorotic Mottle Virus (MCMV), and Alfalfa Mosaic Virus (AMV) have been shown to be effective in enhancing expression (e.g. Gallie *et al.* Nucl. Acids Res. 15: 8693-8711 (1987); Skuzeski *et al.* Plant Molec. Biol. 15: 65-79 (1990)). Other leader sequences known in the art include but are not limited to: picornavirus leaders, for example, EMCV leader (Encephalomyocarditis 5' noncoding region) (Elroy-Stein, O., Fuerst, T. R., and Moss, B. PNAS USA 86:6126-6130 (1989)); potyvirus leaders, for example, TEV leader (Tobacco Etch Virus) (Allison *et al.*, 1986); MDMV leader (Maize Dwarf Mosaic Virus); Virology 154:9-20; human immunoglobulin heavy-chain binding protein (BiP) leader, (Macejak, D. G., and Sarnow, P., Nature 353: 90-94 (1991); untranslated leader from the coat protein mRNA of alfalfa mosaic virus (AMV RNA 4), (Jobling, S. A., and Gehrke, L., Nature 325:622-625 (1987); tobacco mosaic virus leader (TMV), (Gallie *et al.*, Molecular Biology of RNA, pages 237-256 (1989); or Maize Chlorotic Mottle Virus leader (MCMV) (Lommel *et al.*, Virology 81:382-385 (1991). See also, Della-Cioppa *et al.*, Plant Physiology 84:965-968 (1987).

A minimal promoter may also be incorporated. Such a promoter has low background activity in plants when there is no transactivator present or when enhancer or response element binding sites are absent. One exemplary minimal promoter is the Bz1 minimal promoter, which is obtained from the bronzel gene of maize. Roth *et al.*, Plant Cell 3: 317 (1991). A minimal promoter may also be created by use of a synthetic TATA element. The TATA element allows recognition of the promoter by RNA polymerase factors and confers a basal level of gene expression in the absence of activation (see generally, Mukumoto (1993) Plant Mol Biol 23: 995-1003; Green (2000) Trends Biochem Sci 25: 59-63).

Sequences controlling the targeting of gene products also may be included. For example, the targeting of gene products to the chloroplast is controlled by a signal sequence found at the amino terminal end of various proteins which is cleaved during chloroplast import to yield the mature protein (e.g. Comai et al. J. Biol. Chem. 263: 15104-15109 (1988)). These signal sequences can be fused to heterologous gene products to effect the import of heterologous products into the chloroplast (van den Broeck, et al. Nature 313: 358-363 (1985)). DNA encoding for appropriate signal sequences can be isolated from the 5' end of the cDNAs encoding the RUBISCO protein, the CAB protein, the EPSP synthase enzyme, the GS2 protein or many other proteins which are known to be chloroplast localized. Other gene products are localized to other organelles such as the mitochondrion and the peroxisome (e.g. Unger et al. Plant Molec. Biol. 13: 411-418 (1989)). Examples of sequences that target to such organelles are the nuclear-encoded ATPases or specific aspartate amino transferase isoforms for mitochondria. Targeting cellular protein bodies has been described by Rogers et al. (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 82: 6512-6516 (1985)). In addition, amino terminal and carboxy-terminal sequences are responsible for targeting to the ER, the apoplast, and extracellular secretion from aleurone cells (Koehler & Ho, Plant Cell 2: 769-783 (1990)). Additionally, amino terminal sequences in conjunction with carboxy terminal sequences are responsible for vacuolar targeting of gene products (Shinshi et al. Plant Molec. Biol. 14: 357-368 (1990)).

Another possible element which may be introduced is a matrix attachment region element (MAR), such as the chicken lysozyme A element (Stief, 1989), which can be positioned around an expressible gene of interest to effect an increase in overall expression of the gene and diminish position dependent effects upon incorporation into the plant genome (Stief et al., Nature, 341:343, 1989; Phi-Van et al., Mol. Cell. Biol., 10:2302-2307, 1990).

**Use of non-plant promoter regions isolated from *Drosophila melanogaster* and *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* to express genes in plants**

The promoter in the mini-chromosome of the present invention can be derived from plant or non-plant species. In a preferred embodiment, the nucleotide sequence of the promoter is derived from non-plant species for the expression of genes in plant cells, including but not limited to dicotyledon plant cells such as

tobacco, tomato, potato, soybean, canola, sunflower, alfalfa, cotton and *Arabidopsis*, or monocotyledonous plant cell, such as wheat, maize, rye, rice, turf grass, oat, barley, sorghum, millet, and sugarcane. In one embodiment, the non-plant promoters are constitutive or inducible promoters derived from insect, e.g., *Drosophila*

- 5 *melanogaster* or yeast, e.g., *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Table 2 lists the promoters from *Drosophila melanogaster* and *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* that are used to derive the examples of non-plant promoters in the present invention. Promoters derived from any animal, protist, or fungi are also contemplated. SEQ ID NOS: 4-23 are
- 10 examples of promoter sequences derived from *Drosophila melanogaster* or *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. These non-plant promoters can be operably-linked to nucleic acid sequences encoding polypeptides or non-protein-expressing sequences including, but not limited to, antisense RNA and ribozymes, to form nucleic acid constructs, vectors, and host cells (prokaryotic or eukaryotic), comprising the promoters.

15

**Table 2- *Drosophila melanogaster* Promoters (Information obtained from the Flybase Web Site at <http://flybase.bio.indiana.edu/> which is a database of the *Drosophila* Genome)**

Seq Id No.	Symbol	Flybase ID	Standard promoter gene name	Gene Product	Chromosome
4	gd	FBgn0004654	Phosphogluconate dehydrogenase	6-phosphogluconate dehydrogenase	X
5	rim	FBgn0015946	grim	grim-P138	3
5	ro	FBgn0003961	Urate oxidase	Uro-P1	2
7	na	FBgn0003448	snail	sna-P1	2
8	h3	FBgn0003249	Rhodopsin 3	Rh3	3
9	sp-1 $\gamma$	FBgn0002564	Larval serum protein 1 $\gamma$	Lsp1 $\gamma$ -P1	3

***Saccharomyces cerevisiae* Promoters**

(Information obtained from the *Saccharomyces* Genome Database Web site at <http://www.yeastgenome.org/SearchContents.shtml>)

Seq No.	Symbol	Systematic Name	Standard promoter gene name	Gene Product	Chromosome
---------	--------	-----------------	-----------------------------	--------------	------------

10	ef-2	YBR118W	TEF2 (Translation elongation factor promoter)	Translation elongation factor EF-1 alpha	2
11	eu-1	YGL009C	LEU1 (LEUcine biosynthesis)	isopropylmalate isomerase	7
12	et16	YPR167C	METHionine requiring	3'phosphoadenylyl sulfate reductase	16
13	eu-2	YCL018W	LEU2 (leucine biosynthesis)	beta-IPM (isopropylmalate) dehydrogenase	3
14	is-4	YCL030C	HIS4 (HISTidine requiring)	histidinol dehydrogenase	3
15	et-2	YNL277W	MET2 (methionine requiring)	L-homoserine-O- acetyltransferase	14
16	te-3	YKL178C	STE3 (alias DAF2 Sterile)	a-factor receptor	11
17	rg-1	YOL058W	ARG1(alias ARG10 ARGinine requiring)	arginosuccinate synthetase	15
18	gk-1	YCR012W	PGK1 (phosphoglycerat e kinase)	phosphoglycerate kinase	3
19	PD-1	YDL022W	GPD1 (alias DAR1/HOR1/OS G1/OSR5: glycerol-3- phosphate dehydrogenase activity	glycerol-3- phosphate dehydrogenase	4
20	DH1	YOL086C	ADH1 (alias ADC1)	alcohol dehydrogenase	15
21	PD-2	YOL059W	GPD2 (alias GPD3: glycerol- 3-phosphate dehydrogenase activity	glycerol-3- phosphate dehydrogenase	15
22	rg-4	YHR018C	ARGinine requiring	argininosuccinate lyase	8
23	at-1	YAR035W	YAT-1(carnitine acetyltransferase)	carnitine acetyltransferase	1

The present invention relates to methods for producing a polypeptide, comprising cultivating plant material for the production of the polypeptide at any level, wherein the plant host cells comprises a first nucleic acid sequence encoding the

polypeptide operably linked to a second nucleic acid sequence comprising a heterologous promoter foreign to the nucleic acid sequence, wherein the promoter comprises a sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NOS:4 to 23 or subsequences thereof; and mutant, hybrid, or tandem promoters thereof that retain promoter activity.

The present invention also relates to methods for producing non-protein expressed sequences, comprising cultivating plant material for the production of the non-protein expressed sequence, wherein the plant host cell comprises a first nucleic acid sequence encoding the non-protein expressed sequences operably linked to a second nucleic acid sequence comprising a heterologous promoter foreign to the nucleic acid sequence, wherein the promoter comprises a sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NOS:4 to 23 or subsequences thereof; and mutant, hybrid, or tandem promoters thereof.

The present invention also relates to isolated promoter sequences and to constructs, vectors, or plant host cells comprising one or more of the promoters operably linked to a nucleic acid sequence encoding a polypeptide or non-protein expressing sequence.

In the methods of the present invention, the promoter may also be a mutant of the promoters having a substitution, deletion, and/or insertion of one or more nucleotides in the nucleic acid sequence of SEQ ID NOS:4 to 23.

The present invention also relates to methods for obtaining derivative promoters of SEQ ID NOS:4 to 23.

The techniques used to isolate or clone a nucleic acid sequence comprising a promoter of interest are known in the art and include isolation from genomic DNA. The cloning procedures may involve excision or amplification, for example by polymerase chain reaction, and isolation of a desired nucleic acid fragment comprising the nucleic acid sequence encoding the promoter, insertion of the fragment into a vector molecule, and incorporation of the recombinant vector into the plant cell.

#### **Definitions**

The term "achromosomal" plant or plant part as used herein means a plant or plant part that contains functional, stable and autonomous mini-

chromosomes. Adchromosomal plants or plant parts may be chimeric or not chimeric (chimeric meaning that mini-chromosomes are only in certain portions of the plant, and are not uniformly distributed throughout the plant). An adchromosomal plant cell contains at least one functional, stable and autonomous mini-chromosome.

The term "autonomous" as used herein means that when delivered to plant cells, at least some mini-chromosomes are transmitted through mitotic division to daughter cells and are episomal in the daughter plant cells, i.e. are not chromosomally integrated in the daughter plant cells. Daughter plant cells that contain autonomous mini-chromosomes can be selected for further replication using, for example, selectable or screenable markers. During the introduction into a cell of a mini-chromosome, or during subsequent stages of the cell cycle, there may be chromosomal integration of some portion or all of the DNA derived from a mini-chromosome in some cells. The mini-chromosome is still characterized as autonomous despite the occurrence of such events if a plant may be regenerated that contains episomal descendants of the mini-chromosome distributed throughout its parts, or if gametes or progeny can be derived from the plant that contain episomal descendants of the mini-chromosome distributed through its parts.

As used herein, a "centromere" is any DNA sequence that confers an ability to segregate to daughter cells through cell division. In one context, this sequence may produce a transmission efficiency to daughter cells ranging from about 1% to about 100%, including to about 5%, 10%, 20%, 30%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 80%, 90% or about 95% of daughter cells. Variations in such a transmission efficiency may find important applications within the scope of the invention; for example, mini-chromosomes carrying centromeres that confer 100% stability could be maintained in all daughter cells without selection, while those that confer 1% stability could be temporarily introduced into a transgenic organism, but be eliminated when desired. In particular embodiments of the invention, the centromere may confer stable transmission to daughter cells of a nucleic acid sequence, including a recombinant construct comprising the centromere, through mitotic or meiotic divisions, including through both meiotic and meiotic divisions. A plant centromere is not necessarily derived from plants, but has the ability to promote DNA transmission to daughter plant cells.

As used herein, the term "circular permutations" refer to variants of a sequence that begin at base  $n$  within the sequence, proceed to the end of the sequence, resume with base number one of the sequence, and proceed to base  $n - 1$ . For this analysis,  $n$  may be any number less than or equal to the length of the sequence. For example, circular permutations of the sequence ABCD are: ABCD, BCDA, CDAB, and DABC.

The term "co-delivery" as used herein refers to the delivery of two nucleic acid segments to a cell. In co-delivery of plant growth inducing genes and mini-chromosomes, the two nucleic acid segments are delivered simultaneously using the same delivery method. Alternatively, the nucleic acid segment containing the growth inducing gene, optionally as part of an episomal vector, such as a viral vector or a plasmid vector, may be delivered to the plant cells before or after delivery of the mini-chromosome, and the mini-chromosome may carry an exogenous nucleic acid that induces expression of the earlier-delivered growth inducing gene. In this embodiment, the two nucleic acid segments may be delivered separately at different times provided the encoded growth inducing factors are functional during the appropriate time period.

The term "coding sequence" is defined herein as a nucleic acid sequence that is transcribed into mRNA which is translated into a polypeptide when placed under the control of promoter sequences. The boundaries of the coding sequence are generally determined by the ATG start codon located at the start of the open reading frame, near the 5' end of the mRNA, and TAG, TGA or TAA stop codons at the end of the coding sequence, near the 3' end of the mRNA, and in some cases, a transcription terminator sequence located just downstream of the open reading frame at the 3' end of the mRNA. A coding sequence can include, but is not limited to, genomic DNA, cDNA, semisynthetic, synthetic, or recombinant nucleic acid sequences.

As used herein the term "consensus" refers to a nucleic acid sequence derived by comparing two or more related sequences. A consensus sequence defines both the conserved and variable sites between the sequences being compared. Any one of the sequences used to derive the consensus or any permutation defined by the consensus may be useful in construction of mini-chromosomes.

The term "exogenous" when used in reference to a nucleic acid, for example, is intended to refer to any nucleic acid that has been introduced into a recipient cell, regardless of whether the same or similar nucleic acid is already present in such a cell. Thus, as an example, "exogenous DNA" can include an additional copy of DNA that is already present in the plant cell, DNA from another plant, DNA from a different organism, or a DNA generated externally, such as a DNA sequence containing an antisense message of a gene, or a DNA sequence encoding a synthetic or modified version of a gene. An "exogenous gene" can be a gene not normally found in the host genome in an identical context, or an extra copy of a host gene. The gene may be isolated from a different species than that of the host genome, or alternatively, isolated from the host genome but operably linked to one or more regulatory regions which differ from those found in the unaltered, native gene.

The term "functional" as used herein to describe a mini-chromosome means that when an exogenous nucleic acid is present within the mini-chromosome the exogenous nucleic acid can function in a detectable manner when the mini-chromosome is within a plant cell; exemplary functions of the exogenous nucleic acid include transcription of the exogenous nucleic acid, expression of the exogenous nucleic acid, regulatory control of expression of other exogenous nucleic acids, recognition by a restriction enzyme or other endonuclease, ribozyme or recombinase; providing a substrate for DNA methylation, DNA glycolation or other DNA chemical modification; binding to proteins such as histones, helix-loop-helix proteins, zinc binding proteins, leucine zipper proteins, MADS box proteins, topoisomerases, helicases, transposases, TATA box binding proteins, viral protein, reverse transcriptases, or cohesins; providing an integration site for homologous recombination; providing an integration site for a transposon, T-DNA or retrovirus; providing a substrate for RNAi synthesis; priming of DNA replication; aptamer binding; or kinetochore binding. If multiple exogenous nucleic acids are present within the mini-chromosome, the function of one or preferably more of the exogenous nucleic acids can be detected under suitable conditions permitting function thereof.

As used herein, a "library" is a pool of cloned DNA fragments that represents some or all DNA sequences collected, prepared or purified from a specific source. Each library may contain the DNA of a given organism inserted as discrete restriction enzyme generated fragments or as randomly sheared fragments into many



thousands of plasmid vectors. For purposes of the present invention, *E. coli*, yeast, and *Salmonella* plasmids are particularly useful for propagating the genome inserts from other organisms. In principle, any gene or sequence present in the starting DNA preparation can be isolated by screening the library with a specific hybridization probe (see, for example, Young et al., In: Eukaryotic Genetic Systems ICN-UCLA Symposia on Molecular and Cellular Biology, VII, 315-331, 1977).

As used herein, the term "linker" refers to a DNA molecule, generally up to 50 or 60 nucleotides long and composed of two or more complementary oligonucleotides that have been synthesized chemically, or excised or amplified from existing plasmids or vectors. In a preferred embodiment, this fragment contains one, or preferably more than one, restriction enzyme site for a blunt cutting enzyme and/or a staggered cutting enzyme, such as BamHI. One end of the linker is designed to be ligatable to one end of a linear DNA molecule and the other end is designed to be ligatable to the other end of the linear molecule, or both ends may be designed to be ligatable to both ends of the linear DNA molecule.

As used herein, a "mini-chromosome" is a recombinant DNA construct including a centromere and capable of transmission to daughter cells. A mini-chromosome may remain separate from the host genome (as episomes) or may integrate into host chromosomes. The stability of this construct through cell division could range between from about 1% to about 100%, including about 5%, 10%, 20%, 30%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 80%, 90% and about 95%. The mini-chromosome construct may be a circular or linear molecule. It may include elements such as one or more telomeres, origin of replication sequences, stuffer sequences, buffer sequences, chromatin packaging sequences, linkers and genes. The number of such sequences included is only limited by the physical size limitations of the construct itself. It could contain DNA derived from a natural centromere, although it may be preferable to limit the amount of DNA to the minimal amount required to obtain a transmission efficiency in the range of 1-100%. The mini-chromosome could also contain a synthetic centromere composed of tandem arrays of repeats of any sequence, either derived from a natural centromere, or of synthetic DNA. The mini-chromosome could also contain DNA derived from multiple natural centromeres. The mini-chromosome may be inherited through mitosis or meiosis, or through both meiosis and mitosis. As used herein, the term mini-chromosome specifically

encompasses and includes the terms "plant artificial chromosome" or "PLAC," or engineered chromosomes or microchromosomes and all teachings relevant to a PLAC or plant artificial chromosome specifically apply to constructs within the meaning of the term mini-chromosome.

The term "non-protein expressing sequence" or "non-protein coding sequence" is defined herein as a nucleic acid sequence that is not eventually translated into protein. The nucleic acid may or may not be transcribed into RNA. Exemplary sequences include ribozymes or antisense RNA.

The term "operably linked" is defined herein as a configuration in which a control sequence, e.g., a promoter sequence, directs transcription or translation of another sequence, for example a coding sequence. For example, a promoter sequence could be appropriately placed at a position relative to a coding sequence such that the control sequence directs the production of a polypeptide encoded by the coding sequence.

"Phenotype" or "phenotypic trait(s)", as used herein, refers to an observable property or set of properties resulting from the expression of a gene. The set of properties may be observed visually or after biological or biochemical testing, and may be constantly present or may only manifest upon challenge with the appropriate stimulus or activation with the appropriate signal.

The term "plant," as used herein, refers to any type of plant. Exemplary types of plants are listed below, but other types of plants will be known to those of skill in the art and could be used with the invention. Modified plants of the invention include, for example, dicots, gymnosperm, monocots, mosses, ferns, horsetails, club mosses, liver worts, hornworts, red algae, brown algae, gametophytes and sporophytes of pteridophytes, and green algae.

The term "crop plant" refers to plants grown for agricultural or commercial rather than experimental purposes and specifically excludes *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Some plants grown for experimental purposes may take on commercial importance when used to produce pharmaceutical or chemical products. Centromeres "derived from crop plants" according to the present invention specifically exclude centromeres that are fragments of naturally occurring *Arabidopsis thaliana* centromeres or naturally occurring descendants thereof. Centromeres derived from

crop plants include variants (mutants) of *Arabidopsis thaliana* centromeres, or artificial centromeres synthesized based on nucleotide sequences of *Arabidopsis thaliana* centromeres.

A common class of plants exploited in agriculture are vegetable crops, including artichokes, kohlrabi, arugula, leeks, asparagus, lettuce (e.g., head, leaf, romaine), bok choy, malanga, broccoli, melons (e.g., muskmelon, watermelon, crenshaw, honeydew, cantaloupe), brussels sprouts, cabbage, cardoni, carrots, napa, cauliflower, okra, onions, celery, parsley, chick peas, parsnips, chicory, chinese cabbage, peppers, collards, potatoes, cucumber plants (marrows, cucumbers), pumpkins, cucurbits, radishes, dry bulb onions, rutabaga, eggplant, salsify, escarole, shallots, endive, garlic, spinach, green onions, squash, greens, beet (sugar beet or fodder beet), sweet potatoes, swiss chard, horseradish, tomatoes, kale, turnips, or spices.

Other types of plants frequently finding commercial use include fruit and vine crops such as apples, grapes, apricots, cherries, nectarines, peaches, pears, plums, prunes, quince, almonds, chestnuts, filberts, pecans, pistachios, walnuts, citrus, blueberries, boysenberries, cranberries, currants, loganberries, raspberries, strawberries, blackberries, grapes, avocados, bananas, kiwi, persimmons, pomegranate, pineapple, tropical fruits, pomes, melon, mango, papaya, or lychee.

Modified wood and fiber or pulp plants of particular interest include, but are not limited to maple, oak, cherry, mahogany, poplar, aspen, birch, beech, spruce, fir, kenaf, pine, walnut, cedar, redwood, chestnut, acacia, bombax, alder, eucalyptus, catalpa, mulberry, persimmon, ash, honeylocust, sweetgum, privet, sycamore, magnolia, sourwood, cottonwood, mesquite, buckthorn, locust, willow, elderberry, teak, linden, bubinga, basswood or elm.

Modified flowers and ornamental plants of particular interest, include, but are not limited to, roses, petunias, pansy, peony, olive, begonias, violets, phlox, nasturtiums, irises, lilies, orchids, vinca, philodendron, poinsettias, opuntia, cyclamen, magnolia, dogwood, azalea, redbud, boxwood, *Viburnum*, maple, elderberry, hosta, agave, asters, sunflower, pansies, hibiscus, morning glory, *alstromeria*, zinnia, geranium, *Prosopis*, artemesia, clematis, delphinium, dianthus, gallium, coreopsis, iberis, lamium, poppy, lavender, leucophyllum, sedum, salvia, verbascum, digitalis,

penstemon, savory, pyrethrum, or oenothera. Modified nut-bearing trees of particular interest include, but are not limited to pecans, walnuts, macadamia nuts, hazelnuts, almonds, or pistachios, cashews, pignolas or chestnuts.

Many of the most widely grown plants are field crop plants such as evening primrose, meadow foam, corn (field, sweet, popcorn), hops, jojoba, peanuts, rice, safflower, small grains (barley, oats, rye, wheat, etc.), sorghum, tobacco, kapok, leguminous plants (beans, lentils, peas, soybeans), oil plants (rape, mustard, poppy, olives, sunflowers, coconut, castor oil plants, cocoa beans, groundnuts, oil palms), fibre plants (cotton, flax, hemp, jute), lauraceae (cinnamon, camphor), or plants such as coffee, sugarcane, cocoa, tea, or natural rubber plants. Still other examples of plants include bedding plants such as flowers, cactus, succulents or ornamental plants, as well as trees such as forest (broad-leaved trees or evergreens, such as conifers), fruit, ornamental, or nut-bearing trees, as well as shrubs or other nursery stock.

Still other examples of plants include bedding plants such as flowers, cactus, succulents or ornamental plants, as well as trees such as forest (broad-leaved trees or evergreens, such as conifers), fruit, ornamental, or nut-bearing trees, as well as shrubs or other nursery stock.

Modified crop plants of particular interest in the present invention include, but are not limited to, soybean (including the variety known as *Glycine max*), cotton, canola (also known as rape), wheat, sunflower, sorghum, alfalfa, barley, safflower, millet, rice, tobacco, fruit and vegetable crops or turfgrasses. Exemplary cereals include maize, wheat, barley, oats, rye, millet, sorghum, rice triticales, secale, einkorn, spelt, emmer, teff, milo, flax, gamma grass, *Tripsacum* sp., or teosinte. Oil-producing plants include plant species that produce and store triacylglycerol in specific organs, primarily in seeds. Such species include soybean (*Glycine max*), rapeseed or canola (including *Brassica napus*, *Brassica rapa* or *Brassica campestris*), *Brassica juncea*, *Brassica carinata*, sunflower (*Helianthus annuus*), cotton (*Gossypium hirsutum*), corn (*Zea mays*), cocoa (*Theobroma cacao*), safflower (*Carthamus tinctorius*), oil palm (*Elaeis guineensis*), coconut palm (*Cocos nucifera*), flax (*Linum usitatissimum*), castor (*Ricinus communis*) or peanut (*Arachis hypogaea*).

The term "plant part" as used herein includes pollen, silk, endosperm, ovule, seed, embryo, pods, roots, cuttings, tubers, stems, stalks, fruit, berries, nuts,

flowers, leaves, bark, wood, whole plant, plant cell, plant organ, protoplast, cell culture, crown, callus culture, petiole, petal, sepal, stamen, stigma, style, bud, or any group of plant cells organized into a structural and functional unit. In one preferred embodiment, the exogenous nucleic acid is expressed in a specific location or tissue of a plant, for example, epidermis, vascular tissue, meristem, cambium, cortex, pith, leaf, sheath, flower, root or seed.

The term "promoter" is defined herein as a DNA sequence that allows the binding of RNA polymerase (including but not limited to RNA polymerase I, RNA polymerase II and RNA polymerase III from eukaryotes) and directs the polymerase to a downstream transcriptional start site of a nucleic acid sequence encoding a polypeptide to initiate transcription. RNA polymerase effectively catalyzes the assembly of messenger RNA complementary to the appropriate DNA strand of the coding region.

A "promoter operably linked to a heterologous gene" is a promoter that is operably linked to a gene that is different from the gene to which the promoter is normally operably linked in its native state. Similarly, an "exogenous nucleic acid operably linked to a heterologous regulatory sequence" is a nucleic acid that is operably linked to a regulatory control sequence to which it is not normally linked in its native state.

The term "hybrid promoter" is defined herein as parts of two or more promoters that are fused together to generate a sequence that is a fusion of the two or more promoters, which is operably linked to a coding sequence and mediates the transcription of the coding sequence into mRNA.

The term "tandem promoter" is defined herein as two or more promoter sequences each of which is operably linked to a coding sequence and mediates the transcription of the coding sequence into mRNA.

The term "constitutive active promoter" is defined herein as a promoter that allows permanent stable expression of the gene of interest.

The term "Inducible promoter" is defined herein as a promoter induced by the presence or absence of biotic or an abiotic factor.

The term "polypeptide" does not refer to a specific length of the encoded product and, therefore, encompasses peptides, oligopeptides, and proteins.

The term "exogenous polypeptide" is defined as a polypeptide which is not native to the plant cell, a native polypeptide in which modifications have been made to alter the native sequence, or a native polypeptide whose expression is quantitatively altered as a result of a manipulation of the plant cell by recombinant DNA techniques.

As used herein, the term "pseudogene" refers to a non-functional copy of a protein-coding gene; pseudogenes found in the genomes of eukaryotic organisms are often inactivated by mutations and are thus presumed to be non-essential to that organism; pseudogenes of reverse transcriptase and other open reading frames found in retroelements are abundant in the centromeric regions of *Arabidopsis* and other organisms and are often present in complex clusters of related sequences.

As used herein the term "regulatory sequence" refers to any DNA sequence that influences the efficiency of transcription or translation of any gene. The term includes, but is not limited to, sequences comprising promoters, enhancers and terminators.

As used herein the term "repeated nucleotide sequence" refers to any nucleic acid sequence of at least 25 bp present in a genome or a recombinant molecule, other than a telomere repeat, that occurs at least two or more times and that are preferably at least 80% identical either in head to tail or head to head orientation either with or without intervening sequence between repeat units.

As used herein, the term "retroelement" or "retrotransposon" refers to a genetic element related to retroviruses that disperse through an RNA stage; the abundant retroelements present in plant genomes contain long terminal repeats (LTR retrotransposons) and encode a polyprotein gene that is processed into several proteins including a reverse transcriptase. Specific retroelements (complete or partial sequences) can be found in and around plant centromeres and can be present as dispersed copies or complex repeat clusters. Individual copies of retroelements may be truncated or contain mutations; intact retroelements are rarely encountered.

As used herein the term "satellite DNA" refers to short DNA sequences (typically < 1000 bp) present in a genome as multiple repeats, mostly arranged in a tandemly repeated fashion, as opposed to a dispersed fashion. Repetitive arrays of specific satellite repeats are abundant in the centromeres of many higher eukaryotic organisms.

As used herein, a "screenable marker" is a gene whose presence results in an identifiable phenotype. This phenotype may be observable under standard conditions, altered conditions such as elevated temperature, or in the presence of certain chemicals used to detect the phenotype. The use of a screenable marker allows for the use of lower, sub-killing antibiotic concentrations and the use of a visible marker gene to identify clusters of transformed cells, and then manipulation of these cells to homogeneity. Preferred screenable markers of the present include genes that encode fluorescent proteins that are detectable by a visual microscope such as the fluorescent reporter genes DsRed, ZsGreen, ZsYellow, AmCyan, Green Fluorescent Protein (GFP). An additional preferred screenable marker gene is *lac*.

The invention also contemplates novel methods of screening for adchromosomal plant cells that involve use of relatively low, sub-killing concentrations of selection agent (e.g. sub-killing antibiotic concentrations), and also involve use of a screenable marker (e.g., a visible marker gene) to identify clusters of modified cells carrying the screenable marker, after which these screenable cells are manipulated to homogeneity. As used herein, a "selectable marker" is a gene whose presence results in a clear phenotype, and most often a growth advantage for cells that contain the marker. This growth advantage may be present under standard conditions, altered conditions such as elevated temperature, specialized media compositions, or in the presence of certain chemicals such as herbicides or antibiotics. Use of selectable markers is described, for example, in Broach et al. *Gene*, 8:121-133, 1979. Examples of selectable markers include the thymidine kinase gene, the cellular adenine phosphoribosyltransferase gene and the dihydrolfolate reductase gene, hygromycin phosphotransferase genes, the bar gene, neomycin phosphotransferase genes and phosphomannose isomerase, among others. Preferred selectable markers in the present invention include genes whose expression confer antibiotic or herbicide resistance to the host cell, or proteins allowing utilization of a carbon source not normally utilized by plant cells. Expression of one of these markers should be sufficient to enable the maintenance of a vector within the host cell, and facilitate the manipulation of the plasmid into new host cells. Of particular interest in the present invention are proteins conferring cellular resistance to kanamycin, G 418, paramomycin, hygromycin, bialaphos, and glyphosate for example, or proteins

allowing utilization of a carbon source, such as mannose, not normally utilized by plant cells.

The term "stable" as used herein means that the mini-chromosome can be transmitted to daughter cells over at least 8 mitotic generations. Some embodiments of mini-chromosomes may be transmitted as functional, autonomous units for less than 8 mitotic generations, e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, or 7. Preferred mini-chromosomes can be transmitted over at least 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29 or 30 generations, for example, through the regeneration or differentiation of an entire plant, and preferably are transmitted through meiotic division to gametes. Other preferred mini-chromosomes can be further maintained in the zygote derived from such a gamete or in an embryo or endosperm derived from one or more such gametes. A "functional and stable" mini-chromosome is one in which functional mini-chromosomes can be detected after transmission of the mini-chromosomes over at least 8 mitotic generations, or after inheritance through a meiotic division. During mitotic division, as occurs occasionally with native chromosomes, there may be some non-transmission of mini-chromosomes; the mini-chromosome may still be characterized as stable despite the occurrence of such events if an adchromosomal plant that contains descendants of the mini-chromosome distributed throughout its parts may be regenerated from cells, cuttings, propagules, or cell cultures containing the mini-chromosome, or if an adchromosomal plant can be identified in progeny of the plant containing the mini-chromosome.

As used herein, a "structural gene" is a sequence which codes for a polypeptide or RNA and includes 5' and 3' ends. The structural gene may be from the host into which the structural gene is transformed or from another species. A structural gene will preferably, but not necessarily, include one or more regulatory sequences which modulate the expression of the structural gene, such as a promoter, terminator or enhancer. A structural gene will preferably, but not necessarily, confer some useful phenotype upon an organism comprising the structural gene, for example, herbicide resistance. In one embodiment of the invention, a structural gene may encode an RNA sequence which is not translated into a protein, for example a tRNA or rRNA gene.



As used herein, the term "telomere" or "telomere DNA" refers to a sequence capable of capping the ends of a chromosome, thereby preventing degradation of the chromosome end, ensuring replication and preventing fusion to other chromosome sequences. Telomeres can include naturally occurring telomere sequences or synthetic sequences. Telomeres from one species may confer telomere activity in another species. An exemplary telomere DNA is a heptanucleotide telomere repeat TTTAGGG (and its complement) found in the majority of plants.

"Transformed," "transgenic," "modified," and "recombinant" refer to a host organism such as a plant into which an exogenous or heterologous nucleic acid molecule has been introduced, and includes meiocytes, seeds, zygotes, embryos, endosperm, or progeny of such plant that retain the exogenous or heterologous nucleic acid molecule but which have not themselves been subjected to the transformation process.

When the phrase "transmission efficiency" of a certain percent is used, transmission percent efficiency is calculated by measuring mini-chromosome presence through one or more mitotic or meiotic generations. It is directly measured as the ratio (expressed as a percentage) of the daughter cells or plants demonstrating presence of the mini-chromosome to parental cells or plants demonstrating presence of the mini-chromosome. Presence of the mini-chromosome in parental and daughter cells is demonstrated with assays that detect the presence of an exogenous nucleic acid carried on the mini-chromosome. Exemplary assays can be the detection of a screenable marker (e.g. presence of a fluorescent protein or any gene whose expression results in an observable phenotype), a selectable marker, or PCR amplification of any exogenous nucleic acid carried on the mini-chromosome.

#### **Constructing mini-chromosomes by site-specific recombination**

Plant mini-chromosomes may be constructed using site-specific recombination sequences (for example those recognized by the bacteriophage P1 Cre recombinase, or the bacteriophage lambda integrase, or similar recombination enzymes). A compatible recombination site, or a pair of such sites, is present on both the centromere containing DNA clones and the donor DNA clones. Incubation of the donor clone and the centromere clone in the presence of the recombinase enzyme

causes strand exchange to occur between the recombination sites in the two plasmids; the resulting mini-chromosomes contain centromere sequences as well as mini-chromosome vector sequences. The DNA molecules formed in such recombination reactions is introduced into *E. coli*, other bacteria, yeast or plant cells by common methods in the field including, but not limited to, heat shock, chemical transformation, electroporation, particle bombardment, whiskers, or other transformation method followed by selection for marker genes including chemical, enzymatic, color, or other marker present on either parental plasmid, allowing for the selection of transformants harboring mini-chromosomes.

## **II. Methods of detecting and characterizing mini-chromosomes in plant cells or of scoring mini-chromosome performance in plant cells:**

### **Identification of candidate centromere fragments by probing BAC libraries**

Centromere clones are identified from a large genomic insert library such as a Bacterial Artificial Chromosome library. Probes are labeled using nick-translation in the presence of radioactively labeled dCTP, dATP, dGTP or dTTP as in, for example, the commercially available Rediprime kit (Amersham) as per the manufacturer's instructions. Other labeling methods familiar to those skilled in the art could be substituted. The libraries are screened and deconvoluted. Genomic clones are screened by probing with small centromere-specific clones (for example 14F1 was used) which shows high homology to the satellite sequence (14F1 showed homology to "BJCANRD", Genbank ID X68786.1). Other embodiments of this procedure would involve hybridizing a library with other centromere sequences. Of the BAC clones identified using this procedure, a representative set are identified as having high hybridization signals to some probes, and optionally low hybridization signals to other probes. These are selected, the bacterial clones grown up in cultures and DNA prepared by methods familiar to those skilled in the art such as alkaline lysis. The DNA composition of purified clones are surveyed using for example fingerprinting by digesting with restriction enzymes such as, but not limited to, *Hin*I or *Hind*III. In a preferred embodiment the restriction enzyme cuts within the tandem centromere satellite repeat (see below). A variety of clones showing different fingerprints are selected for conversion into mini-chromosomes and inheritance testing. It can also be informative to use multiple restriction enzymes for fingerprinting or other enzymes which can cleave DNA.

**Fingerprinting analysis of BACs and mini-chromosomes**

Centromere function may be associated with large tandem arrays of satellite repeats. To assess the composition and architecture of the centromere BACs, the candidate BACs are digested with a restriction enzyme, such as HindIII, which cuts with known frequency within the consensus sequence of the unit repeat of the tandemly repeated centromere satellite. Digestion products are then separated by agarose gel electrophoresis. Large insert clones containing a large array of tandem repeats will produce a strong band of the unit repeat size, as well as less intense bands at 2x and 3x the unit repeat size, and further multiples of the repeat size. These methods are well-known and there are many possible variations known to those skilled in the art.

**Determining sequence composition of mini-chromosomes by shotgun cloning/sequencing, sequence analysis**

To determine the sequence composition of the mini-chromosome, the insert is sequenced. To generate DNA suitable for sequencing mini-chromosomes are fragmented, for example by using a random shearing method (such as sonication, nebulization, etc). Other fragmentation techniques may also be used such as enzymatic digestion. These fragments are then cloned into a plasmid vector and sequenced. The resulting DNA sequence is trimmed of poor-quality sequence and of sequence corresponding to the plasmid vector. The sequence is then compared to the known DNA sequences using an algorithm such as BLAST to search a sequence database such as GenBank.

To determine the consensus of the satellite repeat in the mini-chromosome, the sequences containing satellite repeat are aligned using a DNA sequence alignment program such as ContigExpress from Vector NTI. The sequences may also be aligned to previously determined repeats for that species. The sequences are trimmed to unit repeat length using the consensus as a template. Sequences trimmed from the ends of the alignment are realigned with the consensus and further trimmed until all sequences are at or below the consensus length. The sequences are then aligned with each other. The consensus is determined by the frequency of a specific nucleotide at each position; if the most frequent base is three times more frequent than the next most frequent base, it was considered the consensus.

Methods for determining consensus sequence are well known in the art, see, e.g., U.S. Pat. App. Pub. No. 20030124561; Hall & Preuss (2002). These methods, including DNA sequencing, assembly, and analysis, are well-known and there are many possible variations known to those skilled in the art. Other alignment parameters may also be useful such as using more or less stringent definitions of consensus.

#### **Non-selective mini-chromosome mitotic inheritance assays**

The following list of assays and potential outcomes illustrates how various assays can be used to distinguish autonomous events from integrated events.

##### **Assay #1: transient assay**

Mini-chromosomes are tested for their ability to become established as chromosomes and their ability to be inherited in mitotic cell divisions. In this assay, mini-chromosomes are delivered to plant cells, for example *Brassica* suspension cells in liquid culture. The cells used can be at various stages of growth. In this example, a population in which some cells were undergoing division was used. The mini-chromosome is then assessed over the course of several cell divisions, by tracking the presence of a screenable marker, e.g. a visible marker gene such as a fluorescent protein. Mini-chromosomes that are inherited well may show an initial delivery into many single cells; after several cell divisions, these single cells divide to form clusters of mini-chromosome-containing cells. Other exemplary embodiments of this method include delivering mini-chromosomes to other mitotic cell types, including roots and shoot meristems.

##### **Assay #2: Non-lineage based inheritance assays on modified transformed cells and plants**

Mini-chromosome inheritance is assessed on modified cell lines and plants by following the presence of the mini-chromosome over the course of multiple cell divisions. An initial population of mini-chromosome containing cells is assayed for the presence of the mini-chromosome, by the presence of a marker gene, including but not limited to a fluorescent protein, a colored protein, a protein assayable by histochemical assay, and a gene affecting cell morphology. All nuclei are stained with a DNA-specific dye including but not limited to DAPI, Hoechst 33258, OliGreen, Giemsa YOYO, or TOTO, allowing a determination of the number of cells

that do not contain the mini-chromosome. After the initial determination of the percent of cells carrying the mini-chromosome, the cells are allowed to divide over the course of several cell divisions. The number of cell divisions,  $n$ , is determined by a method including but not limited to monitoring the change in total weight of cells, and monitoring the change in volume of the cells or by directly counting cells in an aliquot of the culture. After a number of cell divisions, the population of cells is again assayed for the presence of the mini-chromosome. The loss rate per generation is calculated by the equation:

$$\text{Loss rate per generation} = 1 - (F/I)^{1/n}$$

The population of mini-chromosome-containing cells may include suspension cells, roots, leaves, meristems, flowers, or any other tissue of modified plants, or any other cell type containing a mini-chromosome.

These methods are well-known and there are many possible variations known to those skilled in the art; they have been used before with human cells and yeast cells.

### Assay #3: Lineage based inheritance assays on modified cells and plants

Mini-chromosome inheritance is assessed on modified cell lines and plants by following the presence of the mini-chromosome over the course of multiple cell divisions. In cell types that allow for tracking of cell lineage, including but not limited to root cell files, trichomes, and leaf stomata guard cells, mini-chromosome loss per generation does not need to be determined statistically over a population, it can be discerned directly through successive cell divisions. In other manifestations of this method, cell lineage can be discerned from cell position, or methods including but not limited to the use of histological lineage tracing dyes, and the induction of genetic mosaics in dividing cells.

In one simple example, the two guard cells of the stomata are daughters of a single precursor cell. To assay mini-chromosome inheritance in this cell type, the epidermis of the leaf of a plant containing a mini-chromosome is examined for the presence of the mini-chromosome by the presence of a marker gene, including but not limited to a fluorescent protein, a colored protein, a protein assayable by histochemical assay, and a gene affecting cell morphology. The number

of loss events in which one guard cell contains the mini-chromosome (L) and the number of cell divisions in which both guard cells contain the mini-chromosome (B) are counted. The loss rate per cell division is determined as  $L/(L+B)$ . Other lineage-based cell types are assayed in similar fashion. These methods are well-known and there are many possible variations known to those skilled in the art; they have been used before with yeast cells.

Lineal mini-chromosome inheritance may also be assessed by examining root files (e.g. *Brassica* root files) or clustered cells in callus (e.g. soybean callus) over time. Changes in the percent of cells carrying the mini-chromosome will indicate the mitotic inheritance.

Assay #4: Inheritance assays on modified cells and plants in the presence of chromosome loss agents

Any of the above three assays can be done in the presence of chromosome loss agents (including but not limited to colchicine, colcemid, caffeine, etoposide, nocodazole, oryzalin, trifluran). It is likely that an autonomous mini-chromosome will prove more susceptible to loss induced by chromosome loss agents; therefore, autonomous mini-chromosomes should show a lower rate of inheritance in the presence of chromosome loss agents. These methods have been used to study chromosome loss in fruit flies and yeast; there are many possible variations known to those skilled in the art..

### **III. Transformation of plant cells and plant regeneration**

Various methods may be used to deliver DNA into plant cells. These include biological methods, such as *Agrobacterium*, *E. coli*, and viruses, physical methods such as biolistic particle bombardment, nanocopy device, the Stein beam gun silicon, carbide whiskers and microinjection, electrical methods such as electroporation, and chemical methods such as the use of poly-ethylene glycol and other compounds known to stimulate DNA uptake into cells. Examples of these techniques are described by Paszkowski et al., EMBO J 3: 2717-2722 (1984), Potrykus et al., Mol. Gen. Genet. 199: 169-177 (1985), Reich et al., Biotechnology 4: 1001-1004 (1986), and Klein et al., Nature 327: 70-73 (1987). Transformation using silicon carbide whiskers, e.g. in maize, is described in Brisibe, J. Exp. Bot.

51(343):187-196 (2000) and Dunwell, Methods Mol. Biol. 111:375-82 (1999) and U.S. Patent No. 5,464,765.

#### *Agrobacterium*-mediated delivery

*Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation is one method for introducing a desired genetic element into a plant. Several *Agrobacterium* species mediate the transfer of a specific DNA known as "T-DNA" that can be genetically engineered to carry a desired piece of DNA into many plant species. Plasmids used for delivery contain the T-DNA flanking the nucleic acid to be inserted into the plant. The major events marking the process of T-DNA mediated pathogenesis are induction of virulence genes, processing and transfer of T-DNA.

There are three common methods to transform plant cells with *Agrobacterium*. The first method is co-cultivation of *Agrobacterium* with cultured isolated protoplasts. This method requires an established culture system that allows culturing protoplasts and plant regeneration from cultured protoplasts. The second method is transformation of cells or tissues with *Agrobacterium*. This method requires (a) that the plant cells or tissues can be modified by *Agrobacterium* and (b) that the modified cells or tissues can be induced to regenerate into whole plants. The third method is transformation of seeds, apices or meristems with *Agrobacterium*. This method requires exposure of the meristematic cells of these tissues to *Agrobacterium* and micropropagation of the shoots or plan organs arising from these meristematic cells.

Those of skill in the art are familiar with procedures for growth and suitable culture conditions for *Agrobacterium* as well as subsequent inoculation procedures. Liquid or semi-solid culture media can be used. The density of the *Agrobacterium* culture used for inoculation and the ratio of *Agrobacterium* cells to explant can vary from one system to the next, as can media, growth procedures, timing and lighting conditions.

Transformation of dicotyledons using *Agrobacterium* has long been known in the art, and transformation of monocotyledons using *Agrobacterium* has also been described. See, WO 94/00977 and U.S. Pat. No. 5,591,616, both of which are incorporated herein by reference. See also, Negrotto et al., Plant Cell Reports 19: 798-803 (2000), incorporated herein by reference.

A number of wild-type and disarmed strains of *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* and *Agrobacterium rhizogenes* harboring Ti or Ri plasmids can be used for gene transfer into plants. Preferably, the *Agrobacterium* hosts contain disarmed Ti and Ri plasmids that do not contain the oncogenes that cause tumorigenesis or rhizogenesis. Exemplary strains include *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* strain C58, a nopaline-type strain that is used to mediate the transfer of DNA into a plant cell, octopine-type strains such as LBA4404 or succinamopine-type strains, e.g., EHA101 or EHA105. The use of these strains for plant transformation has been reported and the methods are familiar to those of skill in the art.

U.S. Application No. 20040244075 published December 2, 2004 describes improved methods of *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation. The efficiency of transformation by *Agrobacterium* may be enhanced by using a number of methods known in the art. For example, the inclusion of a natural wound response molecule such as acetosyringone (AS) to the *Agrobacterium* culture has been shown to enhance transformation efficiency with *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* (Shahla et al., (1987) Plant Molec. Biol. 8:291-298). Alternatively, transformation efficiency may be enhanced by wounding the target tissue to be modified or transformed. Wounding of plant tissue may be achieved, for example, by punching, maceration, bombardment with microprojectiles, etc. (See e.g., Bidney et al., (1992) Plant Molec. Biol. 18:301-313).

In addition, a recent method described by Broothaerts, et. al. (Nature 433: 629-633, 2005) expands the bacterial genera that can be used to transfer genes into plants. This work involved the transfer of a disarmed Ti plasmid without T-DNA and another vector with T-DNA containing the marker enzyme beta-glucuronidase, into three different bacteria. Gene transfer was successful and this method significantly expands the tools available for gene delivery into plants.

#### **Microprojectile bombardment delivery**

Another widely used technique to genetically transform plants involves the use of microprojectile bombardment. In this process, a nucleic acid containing the desired genetic elements to be introduced into the plant is deposited on or in small dense particles, e.g., tungsten, platinum, or preferably 1 micron gold particles, which are then delivered at a high velocity into the plant tissue or plant cells using a



specialized biolistics device. Many such devices have been designed and constructed; one in particular, the PDS1000/He sold by BioRad, is the instrument most commonly used for biolistics of plant cells. The advantage of this method is that no specialized sequences need to be present on the nucleic acid molecule to be delivered into plant cells; delivery of any nucleic acid sequence is theoretically possible.

For the bombardment, cells in suspension are concentrated on filters or solid culture medium. Alternatively, immature embryos, seedling explants, or any plant tissue or target cells may be arranged on solid culture medium. The cells to be bombarded are positioned at an appropriate distance below the microprojectile stopping plate.

Various biolistics protocols have been described that differ in the type of particle or the manner in which DNA is coated onto the particle. Any technique for coating microprojectiles that allows for delivery of transforming DNA to the target cells may be used. For example, particles may be prepared by functionalizing the surface of a gold oxide particle, providing free amine groups. DNA, having a strong negative charge, binds to the functionalized particles.

Parameters such as the concentration of DNA used to coat microprojectiles may influence the recovery of transformants containing a single copy of the transgene. For example, a lower concentration of DNA may not necessarily change the efficiency of the transformation but may instead increase the proportion of single copy insertion events. In this regard, ranges of approximately 1 ng to approximately 10  $\mu$ g (10,000 ng), approximately 5 ng to 8  $\mu$ g or approximately 20 ng, 50 ng, 100 ng, 200 ng, 500 ng, 1  $\mu$ g, 2  $\mu$ g, 5  $\mu$ g, or 7  $\mu$ g of transforming DNA may be used per each 1.0-2.0 mg of starting 1.0 micron gold particles.

Other physical and biological parameters may be varied, such as manipulation of the DNA/microprojectile precipitate, factors that affect the flight and velocity of the projectiles, manipulation of the cells before and immediately after bombardment (including osmotic state, tissue hydration and the subculture stage or cell cycle of the recipient cells), the orientation of an immature embryo or other target tissue relative to the particle trajectory, and also the nature of the transforming DNA, such as linearized DNA or intact supercoiled plasmids. One may particularly wish to

adjust physical parameters such as DNA concentration, gap distance, flight distance, tissue distance, and helium pressure.

The particles delivered via biolistics can be "dry" or "wet." In the "dry" method, the mini-chromosome DNA-coated particles such as gold are applied onto a macrocarrier (such as a metal plate, or a carrier sheet made of a fragile material such as mylar) and dried. The gas discharge then accelerates the macrocarrier into a stopping screen, which halts the macrocarrier but allows the particles to pass through; the particles then continue their trajectory until they impact the tissue being bombarded. For the "wet" method, the droplet containing the mini-chromosome DNA-coated particles is applied to the bottom part of a filter holder, which is attached to a base which is itself attached to a rupture disk holder used to hold the rupture disk to the helium egress tube for bombardment. The gas discharge directly displaces the DNA/gold droplet from the filter holder and accelerates the particles and their DNA cargo into the tissue being bombarded. The wet biolistics method has been described in detail elsewhere but has not previously been applied in the context of plants (Mialhe et al., *Mol Mar Biol Biotechnol.* 4(4):275-83 1995). The concentrations of the various components for coating particles and the physical parameters for delivery can be optimized using procedures known in the art.

A variety of plant cells/tissues are suitable for transformation, including immature embryos, scutellar tissue, suspension cell cultures, immature inflorescence, shoot meristem, epithelial peels, nodal explants, callus tissue, hypocotyl tissue, cotyledons, roots, and leaves, meristem cells, and gametic cells such as microspores, pollen, sperm and egg cells. It is contemplated that any cell from which a fertile plant may be regenerated is useful as a recipient cell. Callus may be initiated from tissue sources including, but not limited to, immature embryos, seedling apical meristems, microspore-derived embryos, roots, hypocotyls, cotyledons and the like. Those cells which are capable of proliferating as callus also are recipient cells for genetic transformation.

Any suitable plant culture medium can be used. Examples of suitable media would include but are not limited to MS-based media (Murashige and Skoog, *Physiol. Plant*, 15:473-497, 1962) or N6-based media (Chu et al., *Scientia Sinica* 18:659, 1975) supplemented with additional plant growth regulators including but not limited to auxins such as picloram (4-amino-3,5,6-trichloropicolinic acid), 2,4-D (2,4-

dichlorophenoxyacetic acid), naphthalene-acetic acid (NAA) and dicamba (3,6-dichloroanistic acid), cytokinins such as BAP (6-benzylaminopurine) and kinetin, and gibberellins. Other media additives can include but are not limited to amino acids, macroelements, iron, microelements, vitamins and organics, carbohydrates, undefined media components such as casein hydrolysates, an appropriate gelling agent such as a form of agar, a low melting point agarose or Gelrite if desired. Those of skill in the art are familiar with the variety of tissue culture media, which when supplemented appropriately, support plant tissue growth and development and are suitable for plant transformation and regeneration. These tissue culture media can either be purchased as a commercial preparation, or custom prepared and modified. Examples of such media would include but are not limited to Murashige and Skoog (Murashige and Skoog, *Physiol. Plant*, 15:473-497, 1962), N6 (Chu et al., *Scientia Sinica* 18:659, 1975), Linsmaier and Skoog (Linsmaier and Skoog, *Physiol. Plant*, 18:100, 1965), Uchimiya and Murashige (Uchimiya and Murashige, *Plant Physiol.* 15:473, 1962), Gamborg's B5 media (Gamborg et al., *Exp. Cell Res.*, 50:151, 1968), D medium (Duncan et al., *Planta*, 165:322-332, 1985), McCown's Woody plant media (McCown and Lloyd, *HortScience* 6:453, 1981), Nitsch and Nitsch (Nitsch and Nitsch, *Science* 163:85-87, 1969), and Schenk and Hildebrandt (Schenk and Hildebrandt, *Can. J. Bot.* 50:199-204, 1972) or derivations of these media supplemented accordingly. Those of skill in the art are aware that media and media supplements such as nutrients and growth regulators for use in transformation and regeneration and other culture conditions such as light intensity during incubation, pH, and incubation temperatures can be varied.

Those of skill in the art are aware of the numerous modifications in selective regimes, media, and growth conditions that can be varied depending on the plant system and the selective agent. Typical selective agents include but are not limited to antibiotics such as geneticin (G418), kanamycin, paromomycin or other chemicals such as glyphosate or other herbicides. Consequently, such media and culture conditions disclosed in the present invention can be modified or substituted with nutritionally equivalent components, or similar processes for selection and recovery of transgenic events, and still fall within the scope of the present invention.

#### **Mini-chromosome Delivery without selection**

Mini-chromosome is delivered to plant cells or tissues, e.g., plant cells in suspension to obtain stably modified callus clones for inheritance assay.

Suspension cells are maintained in a growth media, for example Murashige and Skoog (MS) liquid medium containing an auxin such as 2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid (2,4-D). Cells are bombarded using a particle bombardment process, such as the helium-driven PDS-1000/He system, and propagated in the same liquid medium to permit the growth of modified and non-modified cells. Portions of each bombardment are monitored for formation of fluorescent clusters, which are isolated by micromanipulation and cultured on solid medium. Clones modified with mini-chromosome are expanded and homogenous clones are used in inheritance assays, or assays measuring mini-chromosome structure or autonomy.

#### **Mini-chromosome transformation with selectable marker gene**

Isolation of mini-chromosome-modified cells in bombarded calluses or explants can be facilitated by the use of a selectable marker gene. The bombarded tissues are transferred to a medium containing an appropriate selective agent for a particular selectable marker gene. Such a transfer usually occurs between 0 and about 7 days after bombardment. The transfer could also take place any number of days after bombardment. The amount of selective agent and timing of incorporation of such an agent in selection medium can be optimized by using procedures known in the art. Selection inhibits the growth of non-modified cells, thus providing an advantage to the growth of modified cells, which can be further monitored by tracking the presence of a fluorescent marker gene or by the appearance of modified explants (modified cells on explants may be green under light in selection medium, while surrounding non-modified cells are weakly pigmented). In plants that develop through shoot organogenesis (e.g. *Brassica*, tomato or tobacco), the modified cells can form shoots directly, or alternatively, can be isolated and expanded for regeneration of multiple shoots transgenic for mini-chromosome. In plants that develop through embryogenesis (e.g. corn or soybean), additional culturing steps may be necessary to induce the modified cells to form an embryo and to regenerate in the appropriate media.

Useful selectable marker genes are well known in the art and include, for example, herbicide and antibiotic resistance genes including but not limited to neomycin phosphotransferase II (conferring resistance to kanamycin, paramomycin

and G418), hygromycin phosphotransferase (conferring resistance to hygromycin), 5-enolpyruvylshikimate-3-phosphate synthase (EPSPS, conferring resistance to glyphosate), phosphinothricin acetyltransferase (conferring resistance to phosphinothricin/bialophos), MerA (conferring resistance to mercuric ions). Selectable marker genes may be transformed using standard methods in the art.

The first step in the production of plants containing novel genes involves delivery of DNA into a suitable plant tissue (described in the previous section) and selection of the tissue under conditions that allow preferential growth of any cells containing the novel genes. Selection is typically achieved with a selectable marker gene present in the delivered DNA, which may be a gene conferring resistance to an antibiotic, herbicide or other killing agent, or a gene allowing utilization of a carbon source not normally metabolized by plant cells. For selection to be effective, the plant cells or tissue need to be grown on selective medium containing the appropriate concentration of antibiotic or killing agent, and the cells need to be plated at a defined and constant density. The concentration of selective agent and cell density are generally chosen to cause complete growth inhibition of wild type plant tissue that does not express the selectable marker gene; but allowing cells containing the introduced DNA to grow and expand into achromosomal clones. This critical concentration of selective agent typically is the lowest concentration at which there is complete growth inhibition of wild type cells, at the cell density used in the experiments. However, in some cases, sub-killing concentrations of the selective agent may be equally or more effective for the isolation of plant cells containing minichromosome DNA, especially in cases where the identification of such cells is assisted by a visible marker gene (e.g., fluorescent protein gene) present on the minichromosome.

In some species (e.g., tobacco or tomato), a homogenous clone of modified cells can also arise spontaneously when bombarded cells are placed under the appropriate selection. An exemplary selective agent is the neomycin phosphotransferase II (nptII) marker gene, which is commonly used in plant biotechnology and confers resistance to the antibiotics kanamycin, G418 (geneticin) and paramomycin. In other species, or in certain plant tissues or when using particular selectable markers, homogeneous clones may not arise spontaneously under selection; in this case the clusters of modified cells can be manipulated to homogeneity using

the visible marker genes present on the mini-chromosomes as an indication of which cells contain mini-chromosome DNA.

**Regeneration of adchromosomal plants from explants to mature, rooted plants**

For plants that develop through shoot organogenesis (e.g. *Brassica*, tomato and tobacco), regeneration of a whole plant involves culturing of regenerable explant tissues taken from sterile organogenic callus tissue, seedlings or mature plants on a shoot regeneration medium for shoot organogenesis, and rooting of the regenerated shoots in a rooting medium to obtain intact whole plants with a fully developed root system. These plants are potted in soil and grown to maturity in a greenhouse.

For plant species, such corn and soybean, regeneration of a whole plant occurs via an embryogenic step that is not necessary for plant species where shoot organogenesis is efficient. In these plants the explant tissue is cultured on an appropriate media for embryogenesis, and the embryo is cultured until shoots form. The regenerated shoots are cultured in a rooting medium to obtain intact whole plants with a fully developed root system. These plants are potted in soil and grown to maturity in a greenhouse.

Explants are obtained from any tissues of a plant suitable for regeneration. Exemplary tissues include hypocotyls, internodes, roots, cotyledons, petioles, cotyledonary petioles, leaves and peduncles, prepared from sterile seedlings or mature plants. *Brassica* tissue can be from any *Brassica* species such as *Brassica napus*, *Brassica oleraceae*, *Brassica nigra*, *Brassica carinata*, *Brassica juncea*, and *Brassica campestris*.

Explants are wounded (for example with a scalpel or razor blade) and cultured on a shoot regeneration medium (SRM) containing Murashige and Skoog (MS) medium as well as a cytokinin, e.g., 6-benzylaminopurine (BA), and an auxin, e.g.,  $\alpha$ -naphthaleneacetic acid (NAA), and an anti-ethylene agent, e.g., silver nitrate ( $\text{AgNO}_3$ ). For example, 2 mg/L of BA, 0.05 mg/L of NAA, and 2 mg/L of  $\text{AgNO}_3$  can be added to MS medium for shoot organogenesis. The most efficient shoot regeneration is obtained from longitudinal sections of internode explants.

Shoots regenerated via organogenesis are rooted in a MS medium containing low concentration of an auxin such as NAA. Plants are potted and grown in a greenhouse to sexual maturity for seed harvest.

To regenerate a whole plant with a mini-chromosome, explants are pre-incubated for 1 to 7 days (or longer) on the shoot regeneration medium prior to bombardment with mini-chromosome (see below). Following bombardment, explants are incubated on the same shoot regeneration medium for a recovery period up to 7 days (or longer), followed by selection for transformed shoots or clusters on the same medium but with a selective agent appropriate for a particular selectable marker gene (see below).

**Method of co-delivering growth inducing genes to facilitate isolation of adchromosomal plant cell clones**

Another method used in the generation of cell clones containing mini-chromosomes involves the co-delivery of DNA containing genes that are capable of activating growth of plant cells, or that promote the formation of a specific organ, embryo or plant structure that is capable of self-sustaining growth. In one embodiment, the recipient cell receives simultaneously the mini-chromosome, and a separate DNA molecule encoding one or more growth promoting, organogenesis-promoting, embryogenesis-promoting or regeneration-promoting genes. Following DNA delivery, expression of the plant growth regulator genes stimulates the plant cells to divide, or to initiate differentiation into a specific organ, embryo, or other cell types or tissues capable of regeneration. Multiple plant growth regulator genes can be combined on the same molecule, or co-bombarded on separate molecules. Use of these genes can also be combined with application of plant growth regulator molecules into the medium used to culture the plant cells, or of precursors to such molecules that are converted to functional plant growth regulators by the plant cell's biosynthetic machinery, or by the genes delivered into the plant cell.

The co-bombardment strategy of mini-chromosomes with separate DNA molecules encoding plant growth regulators transiently supplies the plant growth regulator genes for several generations of plant cells following DNA delivery. During this time, the mini-chromosome may be stabilized by virtue of its centromere, but the DNA molecules encoding plant growth regulator genes, or organogenesis-promoting, embryogenesis-promoting or regeneration-promoting genes will tend to be

lost. The transient expression of these genes, prior to their loss, may give the cells containing mini-chromosome DNA a sufficient growth advantage, or sufficient tendency to develop into plant organs, embryos or a regenerable cell cluster, to outgrow the non- modified cells in their vicinity, or to form a readily identifiable structure that is not formed by non- modified cells. Loss of the DNA molecule encoding these genes will prevent phenotypes from manifesting themselves that may be caused by these genes if present through the remainder of plant regeneration. In rare cases, the DNA molecules encoding plant growth regulator genes will integrate into the host plant's genome or into the mini-chromosome.

As described in Example 3, mini-chromosome DNA has been co-delivered into plant cells together with DNA encoding genes that promote plant cell growth. Under a different embodiment of this invention, the genes promoting plant cell growth may be genes promoting shoot formation or embryogenesis, or giving rise to any identifiable organ, tissue or structure that can be regenerated into a plant. In this case, it may be possible to obtain embryos or shoots harboring mini-chromosomes directly after DNA delivery, without the need to induce shoot formation with growth activators supplied into the medium, or lowering the growth activator treatment necessary to regenerate plants. The advantages of this method are more rapid regeneration, higher transformation efficiency, lower background growth of non- modified tissue, and lower rates of morphologic abnormalities in the regenerated plants (due to shorter and less intense treatments of the tissue with chemical plant growth activators added to the growth medium).

**Determination of mini-chromosome structure and autonomy in adchromosomal plants and tissues**

The structure and autonomy of the mini-chromosome in adchromosomal plants and tissues can be determined by methods including but not limited to: conventional and pulsed-field Southern blot hybridization to genomic DNA from modified tissue subjected or not subjected to restriction endonuclease digestion, dot blot hybridization of genomic DNA from modified tissue hybridized with different mini-chromosome specific sequences, PCR on DNA from modified tissues with probes specific to the mini-chromosome, or Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization to nuclei of modified cells. The table below summarizes these methods.



Assay	Assay details	Potential outcome	Interpretation
Southern blot	Restriction digest of genomic DNA* compared to purified mini-C	Native sizes and pattern of bands	Autonomous or integrated via CEN fragment
		Altered sizes or pattern of bands	Integrated or rearranged
CHEF gel Southern blot	Restriction digest of genomic DNA compared to purified mini-C	Native sizes and pattern of bands	Autonomous or integrated via CEN fragment
		Altered sizes or pattern of bands	Integrated or rearranged
	Native genomic DNA (no digest)	Mini-C band migrating ahead of genomic DNA	Autonomous circles or linears present in plant
		Mini-C band co-migrating with genomic DNA	Integrated
		>1 mini-C bands observed	Various possibilities
Exonuclease assay	Exonuclease digestion of genomic DNA followed by detection of circular mini-chromosome by PCR, dot blot, or restriction digest (optional), electrophoresis and southern blot (useful for circular mini-chromosomes)	Signal strength close to that w/o exonuclease	Autonomous circles present
		No signal or signal strength lower than w/o exonuclease	Integrated
Mini-chromosome rescue	Transformation of plant genomic DNA into <i>E. coli</i> followed by selection for antibiotic resistance genes on mini-C	Colonies isolated only from mini-C plants with mini-Cs, not from controls; mini-C structure matches that of the parental mini-C	Autonomous circles present, native mini-C structure
		Colonies isolated only from mini-C plants with mini-Cs, not from controls; mini-C structure different from parental mini-C	Autonomous circles present, rearranged mini-C structure OR mini-Cs integrated via centromere fragment
		Colonies observed both in mini-C-modified plants and in controls	Various possibilities
PCR	PCR amplification of various parts of the mini-chromosome	All mini-c parts detected by PCR	Complete mini-C sequences present in plant
		Subset of mini-c parts detected by PCR	Partial mini-C sequences present in plant
FISH	Detection of mini-chromosome sequences	Mini-C sequences detected, free of genome	autonomous

Assay	Assay details	Potential outcome	Interpretation
	in mitotic or meiotic nuclei by fluorescence in situ hybridization	Mini-C sequences detected, associated with genome	integrated
		Mini-C sequences detected, both free and associated with genome	Both autonomous and integrated mini-C sequences present
		No mini-C sequences detected	Mini-C DNA not visible by FISH

\* Genomic DNA refers to total DNA extracted from plants containing a mini-chromosome

Furthermore, mini-chromosome structure can be examined by characterizing mini-chromosomes 'rescued' from adchromosomal cells. Circular mini-chromosomes that contain bacterial sequences for their selection and propagation in bacteria can be rescued from an adchromosomal plant or plant cell and re-introduced into bacteria. If no loss of sequences has occurred during replication of the mini-chromosome in plant cells, the mini-chromosome is able to replicate in bacteria and confer antibiotic resistance. Total genomic DNA is isolated from the adchromosomal plant cells by any method for DNA isolation known to those skilled in the art, including but not limited to a standard cetyltrimethylammonium bromide (CTAB) based method (Current Protocols in Molecular Biology (1994) John Wiley & Sons, N.Y., 2.3) The purified genomic DNA is introduced into bacteria (e.g., *E. coli*) using methods familiar to one skilled in the art (for example heat shock or electroporation). The transformed bacteria are plated on solid medium containing antibiotics to select bacterial clones modified with mini-chromosome DNA. Modified bacterial clones are grown up, the plasmid DNA purified (by alkaline lysis for example), and DNA analyzed by restriction enzyme digestion and gel electrophoresis or by sequencing. Because plant-methylated DNA containing methylcytosine residues will be degraded by wild-type strains of *E. coli*, bacterial strains (e.g. DH10B) deficient in the genes encoding methylation restriction nucleases (e.g. the *mcr* and *mrr* gene loci in *E. coli*) are best suited for this type of analysis. Mini-chromosome rescue can be performed on any plant tissue or clone of plant cells modified with a mini-chromosome.

---

Circular mini-chromosomes that contain bacterial sequences for their selection and propagation in bacteria can be rescued from an adchromosomal plant or plant cell and re-introduced into bacteria. If no loss of sequences has occurred during replication of the mini-chromosome in plant cells, the mini-chromosome is able to replicate in bacteria and confer antibiotic resistance. Total genomic DNA is isolated

from the adchromosomal plant cells by any method for DNA isolation known to those skilled in the art, including but not limited to a standard cetyltrimethylammonium bromide (CTAB) based method (Current Protocols in Molecular Biology (1994) John Wiley & Sons, N.Y., 2.3) The purified genomic DNA is introduced into bacteria (e.g. *E. coli*) using methods familiar to one skilled in the art (for example heat shock or electroporation). The transformed bacteria are plated on solid medium containing antibiotics to select bacterial clones modified with mini-chromosome DNA. Modified bacterial clones are grown up, the plasmid DNA purified (by alkaline lysis for example), and DNA analyzed by restriction enzyme digestion and gel electrophoresis or by sequencing. Because plant-methylated DNA containing methylcytosine residues will be degraded by wild-type strains of *E. coli*, bacterial strains (e.g. DH10B) deficient in the genes encoding methylation restriction nucleases (e.g. the *mcr* and *mrr* gene loci in *E. coli*) are best suited for this type of analysis. Mini-chromosome rescue can be performed on any plant tissue or clone of plant cells modified with a mini-chromosome.

#### **Mini-chromosome autonomy demonstration by In Situ Hybridization (ISH)**

To assess whether the mini-chromosome is autonomous from the native plant chromosomes, or has integrated into the plant genome, In Situ Hybridization is carried out (Fluorescent In Situ Hybridization or FISH is particularly well suited to this purpose). In this assay, mitotic or meiotic tissue, such as root tips or meiocytes from the anther, possibly treated with metaphase arrest agents such as colchicines is obtained, and standard FISH methods are used to label both the centromere and sequences specific to the mini-chromosome. For example, for *Brassica*, the *Brassica* centromere is labeled using probes from sequence 14F1, which labels all *Brassica* chromosomes with one fluorescent tag (Molecular Probes Alexafluor 568, for example), and sequences specific to the mini-chromosome are labeled with another fluorescent tag (Alexafluor 488, for example). All centromere sequences are detected with the first tag; only mini-chromosomes are detected with both the first and second tag. Chromosomes are stained with a DNA-specific dye including but not limited to DAPI, Hoechst 33258, OliGreen, Giemsa YOYO, and TOTO. An autonomous mini-chromosome is visualized as a body that shows hybridization signal with both centromere probes and mini-chromosome specific

probes and is separate from the native chromosomes. Similar procedures can be carried out for centromeres derived from other plant species.

#### **Determination of gene expression levels**

The expression level of any gene present on the mini-chromosome can be determined by methods including but not limited to one of the following. The mRNA level of the gene can be determined by Northern Blot hybridization, Reverse Transcriptase- Polymerase Chain Reaction, binding levels of a specific RNA-binding protein, in situ hybridization, or dot blot hybridization.

The protein level of the gene product can be determined by Western blot hybridization, Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbant Assay (ELISA), fluorescent quantitation of a fluorescent gene product, enzymatic quantitation of an enzymatic gene product, immunohistochemical quantitation, or spectroscopic quantitation of a gene product that absorbs a specific wavelength of light.

#### **Use of exonuclease to isolate circular mini-chromosome DNA from genomic DNA:**

Exonucleases may be used to obtain pure mini-chromosome DNA, suitable for isolation of mini-chromosomes from *E. coli* or from plant cells. The method assumes a circular structure of the mini-chromosome. A DNA preparation containing mini-chromosome DNA and genomic DNA from the source organism is treated with exonuclease, for example lambda exonuclease combined with *E. coli* exonuclease I, or the ATP-dependent exonuclease (Qiagen Inc). Because the exonuclease is only active on DNA ends, it will specifically degrade the linear genomic DNA fragments, but will not affect the circular mini-chromosome DNA. The result is mini-chromosome DNA in pure form. The resultant mini-chromosome DNA can be detected by a number of methods for DNA detection known to those skilled in the art, including but not limited to PCR, dot blot followed by hybridization analysis, and southern blot followed by hybridization analysis. Exonuclease treatment followed by detection of resultant circular mini-chromosome may be used as a method to determine mini-chromosome autonomy.

#### **Structural analysis of mini-chromosomes by BAC-end sequencing:**

BAC-end sequencing procedures, known to those skilled in the art, can be applied to characterize mini-chromosome clones for a variety of purposes, such as structural characterization, determination of sequence content, and determination of

the precise sequence at a unique site on the chromosome (for example the specific sequence signature found at the junction between a centromere fragment and the vector sequences). In particular, this method is useful to prove the relationship between a parental mini-chromosome and the mini-chromosomes descended from it and isolated from plant cells by mini-chromosome rescue, described above.

#### **Methods for scoring meiotic mini-chromosome inheritance**

A variety of methods can be used to assess the efficiency of meiotic mini-chromosome transmission. In one embodiment of the method, gene expression of genes encoded by the mini-chromosome (marker genes or non-marker genes) can be scored by any method for detection of gene expression known to those skilled in the art, including but not limited to visible methods (e.g. fluorescence of fluorescent protein markers, scoring of visible phenotypes of the plant), scoring resistance of the plant or plant tissues to antibiotics, herbicides or other selective agents, by measuring enzyme activity of proteins encoded by the mini-chromosome, or measuring non-visible plant phenotypes, or directly measuring the RNA and protein products of gene expression using microarray, northern blots, in situ hybridization, dot blot hybridization, RT-PCR, western blots, immunoprecipitation, Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbant Assay (ELISA), immunofluorescence and radio-immunoassays (RIA). Gene expression can be scored in the post-meiotic stages of microspore, pollen, pollen tube or female gametophyte, or the post-zygotic stages such as embryo, seed, or progeny seedlings and plants. In another embodiment of the method, the mini-chromosome can be directly detected or visualized in post-meiotic, zygotic, embryonal or other cells in by a number of methods for DNA detection known to those skilled in the art, including but not limited to fluorescence in situ hybridization, in situ PCR, PCR, southern blot, or by mini-chromosome rescue described above.

#### **FISH analysis of mini-chromosome copy number in meiocytes, roots or other tissues of achromosomal plants**

The copy number of the mini-chromosome can be assessed in any cell or plant tissue by In Situ Hybridization (Fluorescent In Situ Hybridization or FISH is particularly well suited to this purpose). In an exemplary assay, standard FISH methods are used to label the centromere (e.g., for *Brassica*, using probes from sequence 14F1 which labels all *Brassica* chromosomes with one fluorescent tag (Molecular Probes Alexafluor 568, for example)), and to label sequences specific to

the mini-chromosome with another fluorescent tag (Alexafluor 488, for example). All centromere sequences are detected with the first tag; only mini-chromosomes are detected with both the first and second tag. Nuclei are stained with a DNA-specific dye including but not limited to DAPI, Hoechst 33258, OliGreen, Giemsa YOYO, and TOTO. Mini-chromosome copy number is determined by counting the number of fluorescent foci that label with both tags.

#### **Induction of callus and roots from adchromosomal plants tissues for inheritance assays**

Mini-chromosome inheritance is assessed using callus and roots induced from transformed plants. To induce roots and callus, tissues such as leaf pieces are prepared from adchromosomal plants and cultured on a Murashige and Skoog (MS) medium containing a cytokinin, e.g., 6-benzylaminopurine (BA), and an auxin, e.g.,  $\alpha$ -naphthaleneacetic acid (NAA). Any tissue of an adchromosomal plant can be used for callus and root induction, and the medium recipe for tissue culture can be optimized using procedures known in the art.

#### **Clonal propagation of adchromosomal plants**

To produce multiple clones of plants from a mini-chromosome-transformed plant, any tissue of the plant can be tissue-cultured for shoot organogenesis using regeneration procedures described under the section regeneration of plants from explants to mature, rooted plants (see above). Alternatively, multiple auxiliary buds can be induced from a mini-chromosome-modified plant by excising the shoot tip, which can be rooted for a whole plant; each auxiliary bud can be rooted for a whole plant.

#### **Scoring of antibiotic- or herbicide resistance in seedlings and plants (progeny of self- and out-crossed transformants)**

Progeny seeds harvested from mini-chromosome-modified plants can be scored for antibiotic- or herbicide resistance by seed germination under sterile conditions on a growth media (for example Murashige and Skoog (MS) medium) containing an appropriate selective agent for a particular selectable marker gene. Only seeds containing the mini-chromosome can germinate on the medium and further grow and develop into whole plants. Alternatively, seeds can be germinated in soil, and the germinating seedlings can then be sprayed with a selective agent appropriate for a selectable marker gene. Seedlings that do not contain mini-

chromosome do not survive; only seedlings containing mini-chromosome can survive and develop into mature plants.

**Genetic methods for analyzing mini-chromosome performance:**

In addition to direct transformation of a plant with a mini-chromosome, plants containing a mini-chromosome can be prepared by crossing a first plant containing the functional, stable, autonomous mini-chromosome with a second plant lacking the construct.

Fertile plants modified with mini-chromosomes can be crossed to other plant lines or plant varieties to study mini-chromosome performance and inheritance. In the first embodiment of this method, pollen from an adchromosomal plant can be used to fertilize the stigma of a non-adchromosomal plant. Mini-chromosome presence is scored in the progeny of this cross using the methods outlines in the preceding section. In the second embodiment, the reciprocal cross is performed by using pollen from a non-adchromosomal plant to fertilize the flowers of a adchromosomal plant. The rate of mini-chromosome inheritance in both crosses can be used to establish the frequencies of meiotic inheritance in male and female meiosis. In the third embodiment of this method, the progeny of one of the crosses just described are back-crossed to the non-adchromosomal parental line, and the progeny of this second cross are scored for the presence of genetic markers in the plant's natural chromosomes as well as the mini-chromosome. Scoring of a sufficient marker set against a sufficiently large set of progeny allows the determination of linkage or co-segregation of the mini-chromosome to specific chromosomes or chromosomal loci in the plant's genome. Genetic crosses performed for testing genetic linkage can be done with a variety of combinations of parental lines; such variations of the methods described are known to those skilled in the art.

It should be understood that various changes and modifications to the presently preferred embodiments described herein will be apparent to those skilled in the art. Such changes and modifications can be made without departing from the spirit and scope of the present invention and without diminishing its intended advantages. It is therefore intended that such changes and modifications be covered by the appended claims.

**Example 1**  
***Brassica* Centromere Construction**

**BAC Library Construction**

A Bacterial Artificial Chromosome (BAC) library was constructed from *Brassica* genomic DNA isolated from *B. oleraceae* variety "Wisconsin fastplants" and digested with the restriction enzyme *MboI*. This enzyme was chosen because it is methylation insensitive and therefore can be used to enrich BAC libraries for centromere DNA sequences.

**Probe Identification and Selection**

Three groups of *Brassica* repetitive genomic DNA including specific centromere-localized sequences, were initially compiled as candidate probes for hybridization with the BAC libraries (Table 3). These probes represented various classes of *Brassica* repetitive sequences including satellite repeats (heterochromatic/centromere-specific), rDNA, and hypermethylated DNA fractions.

Four probes were picked to interrogate the BAC libraries. These probes represented different groups of commonly found repetitive sequences in the *Brassica* genome. The probes selected (Table 3) were CANREP (the *Brassica* centromere satellite), rRNA (18S), *HpaII* (bulk methylated DNA purified from genomic DNA by failure to digest with the methylation-sensitive enzyme *HpaII*) and *Sau3A* (bulk methylated DNA purified from genomic DNA by failure to digest with the methylation-sensitive enzyme *Sau3A*1). The probes were prepared from cloned fragments or from bulk methylated DNA prepared from *Brassica* genomic DNA. Sequences from the clones used to prepare each probe are shown in Table 3. Probes were prepared and labeled with standard molecular biology methods.



Table 3 Brassica repetitive genomic sequence and BAC library probes

Group #	Group Name	Probe Name	Description	Clone used for hyb	GenBank accession *	Reference or comment
1	rDNA	B6A10 (SEQ ID NO: 27)	18S rRNA	5012-5-6-A10	AF207007.1	
2	Cen repeat	BF1 (SEQ ID NO: 28)	CANREP	5012-5-14-F01	X68786.1	CANREP is one of a large family of sequences hit by this sequence: gi 860800 emb X68786.1 BJCANRD B.juncea Xle7-2EB gene gi 860798 emb X68784.1 BJCANRB B.juncea Xle4-7B gene gi 17706 emb X12736.1 BCREPC Brassica campestris DNA for satellite
3	Bulk repetitive DNA	Bhpaii	Purified methylated DNA fraction	N/A	N/A	
		Bsau	Purified methylated DNA fraction	N/A	N/A	
				* Accession number of BLAST hit; actual sequence has not been deposited in Genbank		

### **Library Interrogation and Data Analysis**

The BAC clones from the libraries were spotted onto filters and the filters were hybridized with each of the probes to identify specific BAC clones that contain DNA from the group of sequences represented by the probe(s).

A total of 18,432 BAC clones from the library were interrogated with each of the probes described above using the following hybridization conditions: 0.5 x SSC 0.25% SDS at 65 degrees for 15 minutes, followed by a wash at 65 degrees for a half hour. The hybridization intensities of the BAC clones with each probe were scanned to quantitate hybridization intensity for each clone. The outputs (scores of 1 to 10 based on the hybridization intensities, with 10 being the strongest hybridization intensity) were imported into a relational database, for further analysis and classification. The database contained a total of four tables. Each table contained a total of 18,432 entries: the hybridization scores of each BAC clone from the library to one of the probes used to interrogate the library. Data analysis was done using standard SQL (Structured Query Language) routines to find BACs that contain different groups of repetitive sequences.

### **Classification and Selection of BAC Clones for Mini-chromosome Construction**

BAC clones containing centromeric/heterochromatic DNA were identified by their hybridization scores to different probes. The goal was to select BAC clones that contained a diverse set of various repetitive sequences. Nine classes of centromeric BAC clones were eventually chosen to cover the broadest possible range of centromeric/heterochromatic sequences for mini-chromosome construction. Detailed descriptions of each class and probe hybridization values for each class are shown in Table 4.

<b>Table 4. Classification of <i>Brassica</i> BAC clones containing centromeric DNA</b>						
		<b>Probe Hybridization Range*</b>				
<b>Class</b>	<b>Class Properties</b>	<b>CANREP</b>	<b>HpaII</b>	<b>Sau3A</b>	<b>rDNA</b>	<b># clones identified</b>
<b>A</b>	<b>Hi CANREP Hi Sau + Hpa</b>	<b>&gt;= 7</b>	<b>&gt;= 7</b>	<b>&gt;= 7</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>B</b>	<b>Hi CANREP and Sau, Low rDNA</b>	<b>&gt;= 7</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>&gt;= 7</b>	<b>&lt;=4</b>	<b>7</b>

<b>C</b>	<b>Hi Sau and Hpa</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>&gt;= 8</b>	<b>&gt;= 8</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>D</b>	<b>Hi CANREP and Hpa</b>	<b>&gt;= 8</b>	<b>&gt;= 7</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>123</b>
<b>E</b>	<b>Hi CANREP and Sau</b>	<b>&gt;= 8</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>&gt;=7</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>F</b>	<b>Hi CANREP only</b>	<b>&gt;= 7</b>	<b>&lt;=4</b>	<b>&lt;=4</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>G</b>	<b>Hi Sau only</b>	<b>&lt;=4</b>	<b>&lt;=4</b>	<b>&gt;= 7</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>H</b>	<b>Hi Hpa only</b>	<b>&lt;=4</b>	<b>&gt;= 7</b>	<b>&lt;=4</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>58</b>
<b>I</b>	<b>Hi CANREP, middle meth</b>	<b>&gt;=7</b>	<b>4 to 6</b>	<b>4 to 6</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>210</b>
<b>Total**</b>						<b>556</b>
<b>* Values represent hybridization intensities of an individual BAC to each probe on a scale of 1 to 10. Values were normalized.</b>						
<b>N/A = not applicable</b>						

A number of representative clones from each class were chosen to yield a total of 190 BAC clones for further analysis by restriction digest fingerprinting. The BAC clones were fingerprinted based on restriction sites found in the centromere specific sequence(s). Fingerprinting was used to evaluate the sequence composition of the large numbers of BAC clones and to compare their similarity to each other by comparing the restriction enzyme digest fragment patterns. A sequence with a tandem repeated sequence will show a single intense band of unit repeat size when digested with a restriction enzyme that cuts within the unit repeat. Second, BAC clones with similar sequences will show similar patterns of restriction fragments in a digest.

BAC DNA was extracted from bacteria using methods familiar to those skilled in the art. For *Brassica*, the restriction enzyme *HindIII* was used to digest the BAC clones. Colonies containing the BAC clones were grown overnight at 37°C with shaking at 250-300 rpm. DNA from the colonies was isolated using Qiagen solution P1, Qiagen solution P2, Qiagen solution P3, followed by phenol/chloroform extraction. Subsequently, 10 µl of each DNA sample was inserted into a well on a 96-well plate. The DNA samples were mixed with 10 µl of the following mixture: 200 µl 10x buffer (New England Biolabs), 50ul 100x BSA (New England Biolabs), 30 µl enzyme (varies depending on Class of BAC clone) and 750 µl water. The samples were covered and incubated at 37°C 1-4 hours. After the incubation, loading dye was added to each sample and the DNA was analyzed on a 1% agarose gel in 1x TBE, 23volts for 14-18 hours.

For *Brassica*, the restriction enzyme *HindIII* was used to digest the BAC clones. After fingerprinting, 100 BACs were selected based on the fingerprint analysis in order to represent the hybridization classes, with an emphasis on the different classes containing the centromere tandem repeat. Within the hybridization classes, fingerprints showing the 'simple ladder' or 'complex ladder' patterns of bands at integer multiples of the unit centromere tandem repeat were favored. Additionally, within the hybridization classes, BAC clones that represent the diversity of fingerprints were preferred. Also, clones with matching fingerprints were not chosen. In some cases, after a round of functional testing, additional BACs were selected for their similarity of hybridization class and fingerprint to a BAC that showed good centromere function.

Twenty five BAC clones (from the original 190) were selected for mini-chromosome construction based on the fingerprint class. These BACs are listed in Table 5. Fingerprints were classified into 3 classes: 1. high complexity (multiple large bands with no indication of laddering), 2. low ladder (predominant bands at multiples of the unit repeat size for the centromere satellite, and 3. complex ladder (features of both previous types). Subsequent to testing, 4 additional BACs (BB221, BB222, BB229 and BB280) were chosen from the library based on their similarity to BB5 in both hybridization pattern and fingerprint. The preferred BACS have an \*. Table 6 lists the fingerprint classes for 11 selected *Brassica* BACs.

Table 5: Restriction endonuclease fingerprinting of 25 <i>Brassica</i> BACs				
BAC Number	BAC Class	Class Properties	Hind III Fingerprint Class	MiniC tested
BB2	A	Hi CANREP, Meth	3. Complex ladder	BB2R1-1
BB5*	A	Hi CANREP, Meth	3. Complex ladder	BB5R4-1
				BB5R4-3
BB7	B	Hi CANREP, Meth, low rDNA	1. Complex	BB7R2-1
BB11	D	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	2. Simple ladder	BB11R1-2
BB15	C	Hi Meth	3. Complex ladder	BB15R4-1
BB16*	D	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	1. Complex	BB16R1-2
				BB16R1-3
BB18*	D	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	1. Complex	BB18R1-2
				BB18R2-3
BB38*	F	Hi CANREP only	3. Complex ladder	BB38R1-3

BB39	C	Hi Meth	n/d*	BB39R1-3
BB40	C	Hi Meth	n/d*	BB40R1-2
				BB40R1-3
				BB40R2-1
				BB40R3-1
BB47*	D	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	2. Simple ladder	BB47R1-2
BB52	E	Hi CANREP, Meth (Sau)	1. Complex	BB52R1-1
BB60*	D	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	3. Complex ladder	BB60R1-1
BB63*	D	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	2. Simple ladder	BB63R1-1
BB64	I	Hi CANREP, Moderate Meth	1. Complex	BB64R1-1
BB70*	I	Hi CANREP, Moderate Meth	2. Simple ladder	BB70R1-3
BB71*	E	Hi CANREP, Meth (Sau)	3. Complex ladder	BB71R1-1
BB76*	I	Hi CANREP, Moderate Meth	1. Complex	BB76R1-3
BB102	D	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	n/d*	BB102R1-1
BB104*	I	Hi CANREP, Moderate Meth	n/d*	BB104R1-2
BB105	I	Hi CANREP, Moderate Meth	2. Simple ladder	BB105R1-2
BB106	D	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	2. Simple ladder	BB106R1-2
BB119	I	Hi CANREP, Moderate Meth	3. Complex ladder	BB119R1-1
BB129	D	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	n/d*	BB129R1-1
BB140	A	Hi CANREP, Meth	2. Simple ladder	BB140R1-3
BB221	A	Hi CANREP, Meth	3. Complex ladder	BB221R2-1
BB222	A	Hi CANREP, Meth	3. Complex ladder	BB222R2-7
BB229	A	Hi CANREP, Meth	3. Complex ladder	BB229R2-6
BB280	A	Hi CANREP, Meth	3. Complex ladder	BB280R2-3

n/d\*: Gel too faint to score

**Table 6 Restriction endonuclease fingerprint classification for 11 selected *Brassica* BACs**

BAC Number	Class	Class Properties	Hind III fingerprint class
BB5	A	Hi CANREP, Meth	3. Complex ladder
BB16	D	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	1. Complex
BB18	D	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	1. Complex
BB38	F	Hi CANREP only	3. Complex ladder
BB47	D	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	2. Simple ladder

BB60	D	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	3. Complex ladder
BB63	D	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	2. Simple ladder
BB70	I	Hi CANREP, Moderate Meth	2. Simple ladder
BB71	E	Hi CANREP, Meth (Sau)	3. Complex ladder
BB76	I	Hi CANREP, Moderate Meth	1. Complex
BB104	I	Hi CANREP, Moderate Meth	n/d*

n/d\*: Gel too faint to score

*B. oleraceae* (broccoli) BAC BB5 was deposited with the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC) P.O. Box 1549 Manassas, VA 20108, USA on February 23, 2005 and assigned Accession No. \_\_\_\_\_.

To determine the molecular weight of centromere fragments in the BAC libraries, a frozen sample of bacteria harboring a BAC clone was grown in selective liquid media and the BAC DNA harvested using a standard alkaline lysis method. The recovered BAC DNA was restriction digested and resolved on an agarose gel. Centromere fragment size was determined by comparing to a molecular weight standard.

Cre/lox recombined donor DNA and BAC centromere DNA was delivered into bacteria and plated on selective solid media. To determine the molecular weight of centromere fragments in retrofitted mini-chromosomes, three bacterial colonies harboring a mini-chromosome were independently grown in selective liquid media and the BAC DNA harvested using a standard alkaline lysis method. The recovered BAC DNA was restriction digested and resolved on an agarose gel. Centromere fragment size was determined by comparing to a molecular weight standard. If variation in centromere size was noted, the mini-chromosome with the largest centromere insert was used for further experimentation.

### Example 2

#### Assembly and Components of *Brassica* Mini-chromosomes

Two methods have been developed to construct plant mini-chromosomes. The first method relies on cre/lox recombination in which a bacterial mini-chromosome (BAC) vector containing plant centromeric DNA and a loxP recombination site is recombined, by the action of cre recombinase, with a donor vector carrying plant gene expression cassettes to generate a plant mini-chromosome. The second method uses restriction enzyme digestion and ligation to produce two

DNA fragments with compatible cohesive ends: 1) a vector fragment containing plant gene expression cassettes and ii) a centromere fragment. The two fragments are ligated into a circular structure to form a plant mini-chromosomes.

The components of the *Brassica* mini-chromosomes include fluorescent reporter genes, a selectable marker gene, a *Brassica* centromere sequence identified in a *Brassica* BAC library, a telomere sequence, a cloning vector and a donor vector. These components are described in detail below.

#### **Mini-chromosome construction by cre-lox recombination**

*Cre* recombinase-mediated exchange was used to construct mini-chromosomes by combining the plant centromere fragments cloned in pBeloBAC11 with a donor plasmid (e.g. pCHR151, Table 10). The recipient BAC vector carrying the plant centromere fragment contained a *loxP* recombination site; the donor plasmid contained two such sites, flanking the sequences to be inserted into the recipient BAC. Mini-chromosomes were constructed using a two-step method. First, the donor plasmid was linearized to allow free contact between the two *loxP* site; in this step the backbone of the donor plasmid is eliminated. In the second step, the donor molecules were combined with centromere BACs and were treated with *Cre* recombinase, generating circular mini-chromosomes with all the components of the donor and recipient DNA. Mini-chromosomes were delivered into *E. coli* and selected on medium containing kanamycin and chloramphenicol. Only vectors that successfully *cre* recombined and contained both selectable markers survived in the medium. Mini-chromosomes were extracted from bacteria and restriction digested to verify DNA composition and calculate centromere insert size (Table 7).

**Table 7: Cre/Lox Recombined Mini-chromosomes for *Brassica***

Mini-Chromosome	<i>Brassica</i> Centromere Fragment	Centromere insert (kbp)	Donor Vector
BB5R4-1	5	64	pCHR151
BB5R10-1	5	48	pCHR171A
BB5R14-6	5	52	pCHR487
BB5R15-4	5	52	pCHR488
BB5R16-6	5	50	pCHR489
BB71R1-1	71	30	pCHR151
BB221R2-1	221	70	pCHR487
BB222R2-7	222	60	pCHR487

Mini-Chromosome	<i>Brassica</i> Centromere Fragment	Centromere insert (kbp)	Donor Vector
BB229R2-6	229	60	pCHR487
BB280R2-3	280	97	pCHR487

### **Mini-chromosome Construction by Restriction-Ligation**

Mini-chromosomes were also constructed using standard cloning procedures. For example, a BAC containing a centromere fragment was digested with a restriction endonuclease that created sticky ends, as for example, but not limited to NotI, which was commonly used for this purpose. The digested DNA was then electrophoresed to purify the centromere fragment into a single band. The electrophoresis was carried out with either conventional agarose gel electrophoresis with a linear electric field, or CHEF gel electrophoresis using an electric field that switches its orientation in the course of the run. When the electrophoresis was complete, the centromere fragment was visualized by ethidium bromide staining and illumination under ultraviolet light. The band corresponding to centromere DNA was excised, and the DNA was purified from the gel using conventional method for gel-purifying DNA fragments from agarose gels. The purified fragment was then ligated with a vector fragment that contains a low-copy *E. coli* backbone (e.g. the F' plasmid replicon) and one or more plant-expressed genes. The vector fragment was digested with a restriction endonuclease leaving compatible sticky ends to those present on the centromere fragment. Alternatively, both fragments may be blunt.

To achieve a high rate of insertion of the centromere fragment into the vector, the phosphate groups were removed from the ends of the vector molecule by treating this DNA molecule with phosphatase; this step prevented ligation of the vector molecule to itself or to other vector molecules. After ligating vector DNA and centromere fragment, the mini-chromosomes were delivered into *E. coli* and selected on medium containing antibiotics corresponding to the antibiotic-resistance genes present on the vector molecule (e.g. kanamycin and chloramphenicol). Mini-chromosomes are extracted from bacteria and restriction digested to verify DNA composition and calculate centromere insert size (Table 8).



**Table 8 Restriction-Ligation Mini-chromosomes**

Mini-Chromosome	<i>Brassica</i> Centromere Fragment	Centromere insert (kbp)	Donor Vector
pCHR543	5R4-1	64	pCHR510
pCHR591	5R4-1	64	pCHR579
pCHR593	5R4-1	64	pCHR581
pCHR816	5R4-1	64	pCHR806
pCHR817	5R4-1	64	pCHR807
pCHR818	5R4-1	64	pCHR808
pCHR819	5R4-1	64	pCHR809
pCHR820	5R4-1	64	pCHR810
pCHR821	5R4-1	64	pCHR811
pCHR823	5R4-1	64	pCHR813
pCHR824	5R4-1	64	pCHR814
pCHR825	5R4-1	64	pCHR815
pCHR955	5R4-1	64	pCHR945
pCHR958	5R4-1	64	pCHR948
pCHR964	15R4-1	121	pCHR807
pCHR965	15R4-1	121	pCHR815
pCHR967	16R1-2	156	pCHR815
pCHR970	52R1-1	99	pCHR807
pCHR972	60R1-1	49	pCHR807
pCHR973	60R1-1	49	pCHR815

**Cloning Vector**

The vector, pBeloBAC11, is an *E. coli* plasmid cloning vector based on the F' plasmid replicon of *E. coli*. The vector contained a chloramphenicol resistance gene for selection of the plasmid in bacteria, repE, sopA/B/and C for maintenance of the plasmid in bacteria, and a LoxP recombination site for specific cleavage by *Cre* recombinase. A description of all the genes contained within the vector and the location of the gene within the vector are set out in Table 9.

**Table 9: pBeloBAC11 components**

Genetic Element	Size (base pair)	Location (bp)	Details
Bacterial Chloramphenicol resistance	660	766-1425 (complementary)	Bacterial selectable marker
ori2	67	2370-2436	F <sup>2</sup> plasmid origin of replication from <i>E. coli</i>
repE	755	2765-3520	mediation of replication complex at Ori2 (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)

Genetic Element	Size (base pair)	Location (bp)	Details
SopA	1166	4108-5274	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopB	971	5274-6245	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopC	474	6318-6791	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
cos	400	7050-7449	Lambda DNA recognition sequence for phage packaging
LoxP	34	7467-7500	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)

### Source of Coding Regions Used in Plant-Expressed Genes

The fluorescent reporter genes DsRed, and AmCyan were isolated from Athozoa species; and ZsYellow and ZsGreen were isolated from *Zoanthus sp* (Matz *et.al. Nature Biotechnol.* 1999 Oct; 17:969). These reporter genes express proteins that are homologous to Green Fluorescent Protein (GFP), which is a commonly used reporter gene in various biological systems, including plants. All fluorescent reporter genes were obtained from Clontech Corporation (Palo Alto, CA).

The selectable marker gene MerA is a mercuric ion reductase which converts toxic  $Hg^{2+}$  to less toxic metallic mercury. This gene was originally isolated from *E. coli* and then modified to accommodate improved expression in plants (Rugh *et.al. PNAS* 1996 93:318).

The selectable marker gene NPTII (neomycin phosphotransferase II) has been commonly used in plants as a selectable agent (Bevan *et.al. Nature* 1983 304:184). The original source of this gene is *E. coli*.

### Donor Vectors Used to Construct Mini-chromosomes via Cre/Lox Recombinations

#### pCHR151

The plasmid pCHR151 was developed using the commercially available high copy number *E. coli* cloning vector pUC19 (Yanisch-Perron *et al.*, (1985) Gene 33, 103-119). The plasmid backbone was modified with the bacterial kanamycin selectable marker for maintenance of the plasmid in bacterial hosts, a pair of complementary *loxP* sites and a polylinker that facilitated the modular assembly of several plant-expressed genes for expression in plant mini-chromosomes. Using standard cloning methods, plant-expressed gene cassettes were introduced into the modified pUC19 vector to construct pCHR151. This vector includes DsRed with a nuclear localization signal (Clontech Corporation, Palo Alto CA), which was regulated by the *Arabidopsis* UBQ10 promoter (At4g05320) and the *Arabidopsis* pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920). The vector also included the *E. coli* *MerA* gene regulated by the *Arabidopsis thaliana* ACT2 promoter and terminator. The vector also contains a high-copy *E. coli* replication origin and an ampicillin bacterial selectable marker. Mini-chromosome genetic elements within the pCHR151 vector are set out in Table 10.

Prior to using pCHR151 to construct plant mini-chromosomes, pCHR151 was digested with restriction endonucleases to linearize the pCHR151 plasmid and remove the high copy origin of replication and the bacterial ampicillin selectable marker, leaving *loxP* recombination sites on each end of the linear fragment. The resulting linearized vector was *cre* recombined *in vitro* to generate circular donor pCHR151 plasmids lacking a bacterial origin of replication and the ampicillin selectable marker. The donor pCHR151 construct was used to construct plant mini-chromosomes.

**Table 10 Donor Components of pCHR151**

Genetic Element	Size (bp)	Location (bp)	Details
Act2 promoter + intron	1482	7473-8954 (complementary)	The <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> promoter Actin 2 plus natural intron.
MerA	1695	5776-7470 (complementary)	Plant selectable marker providing resistance to mercuric ions (Rugh et.al. PNAS 1996 93:3182).

Genetic Element	Size (bp)	Location (bp)	Details
Act2 terminator	800	4823-5622 (complementary)	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Actin 2 terminator.
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	3825-4641 (complementary)	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker
Pyruvate kinase terminator	332	3349-3680	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920)
DsRed2 + NLS	780	2435-3214	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discosoma</i> sp. (Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
UBQ10 Promoter	2038	361-2398	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> polyubiquitin promoter (At4g05320)
LoxP	34	346-379 and 9005-9038	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)

### pCHR171A

The vector pCHR171A vector was used to generate linear mini-chromosomes by introducing plant telomere sequences. The donor region of pCHR171A is identical to pCHR151 (described above) with the exception of two plant telomeric regions located on both sides of the bacterial kanamycin gene. pCHR171A was constructed using standard cloning methods. Similar to construction of pCHR151, the low copy bacterial backbone of pBeloBAC11 was used in place of the pUC19 high copy backbone to stabilize the addition of the highly repetitive plant telomeric sequences. The bacterial tetracycline gene replaced the pBeloBAC11 chloramphenicol gene for bacterial selection.

Naturally occurring plant telomeres are composed of a seven nucleotide repeat (TAAACCC). Plant telomeres were polymerized using standard PCR methods to generate approximately 800 base pair telomere arrays. The telomere sequences were ligated using standard methods on both sides of the bacterial kanamycin gene. Two unique I-PpoI homing endonuclease restriction sites were introduced between each telomere and the kanamycin gene for linearization of the final mini-chromosome construct. Mini-chromosome genetic elements within the pCHR171 vector are set out in Table 11 below.

**Table 11 Donor Components of pCHR171A**

Genetic Element	Size (base pair)	Location (bp)	Details
Act2 promoter + intron	1482	97-1578	The <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> promoter Actin 2 plus natural intron.
MerA	1695	1581-3275	Plant selectable marker providing resistance to mercuric ions (Rugh et.al. PNAS 1996 93:3182).
Act2 terminator	800	3429-4228	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Actin 2 terminator.
Plant telomere	759	4277-5035	Plant telomere PCR based on plant consensus telomere sequence
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	5211-6027	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker
Plant telomere	760	6161-6920	Plant telomere PCR based on plant consensus telomere sequence
Pyruvate kinase terminator	332	6968-7299	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920)
DsRed2 + NLS	780	7434-8213	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discosoma sp.</i> (Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
UBQ10 Promoter	2038	8250-10287	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> polyubiquitin promoter (At4g05320)
LoxP	34	47-80 and 10303-10336	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)

To generate plant mini-chromosomes with pCHR171A, the vector was digested and cre treated using the same methods as described for pCHR151 to generate donor pCHR171A. Restriction digests of pCHR171A removed the low copy origin of replication and the bacterial tetracycline selectable marker, leaving loxP recombination sites on each end of the linear fragment. The resulting linearized vector was *cre* recombined *in vitro* to generate circular donor pCHR171A plasmids lacking a bacterial origin of replication and the tetracycline selectable marker.

Cre recombinase-mediated exchange was used to construct mini-chromosomes by combining the plant centromere fragments of pBeloBAC11 with the donor vector pCHR171A. The recipient BAC vector carrying the plant centromere fragment contained a *loxP* recombination site, facilitating the introduction of donor DNA via the action of *cre* recombinase. Using purified *cre* recombinase *in vitro*, BAC centromere recipients were combined with donor pCHR171A DNA, generating

circular mini-chromosomes with all the components of the donor and recipient DNA. Mini-chromosomes were delivered into *E. coli* and selected on medium containing kanamycin and chloramphenicol. Only vectors that successfully *cre* recombined contained both selectable markers and were easily selected from non-recombined events. Mini-chromosomes were extracted from bacteria and restriction digested to verify DNA composition and calculate centromere insert size.

To generate linear mini-chromosomes constructed with donor pCHR171A, *E. coli* harboring the mini-chromosomes were grown in selective bacterial growth medium and purified using standard alkaline lysis procedures. Purified mini-chromosomes were restriction digested *in vitro* with homing endonuclease enzyme I-PpoI following standard restriction digest procedures. Linearization of the mini-chromosome results in the removal of the bacterial kanamycin gene cassette leaving plant telomeres flanking both ends of the linear mini-chromosome. Linear mini-chromosomes were ethanol precipitated and used for plant transformation.

#### Other Donor Vectors used via Cre/Lox Recombination

The pCHR487 mini-chromosome donor vector was also used to generate *Brassica* mini-chromosomes. In this vector, the Act2 promoter-MerA gene cassette of pCHR151 was replaced with the yeast TEF2 promoter from *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and the plant kanamycin selectable marker NptII from *E. coli*. To enhance the stability of the NptII transcript, the *Arabidopsis thaliana* UBQ10 intron was inserted 5' of the yeast TEF2 promoter and 3' of the NptII gene. The UBQ10 intron is a naturally occurring component of the transcribed sequences from the *Arabidopsis thaliana* UBQ10 gene and was present in the UB10 promoter in pCHR151. Standard restriction digest and cloning methods were used to generate pCHR487. Construction of plant mini-chromosomes using pCHR487 was performed as described for pCHR151. As with pCHR151, the circular donor pCHR487 lacked a bacterial origin of replication and the bacterial ampicillin selectable marker. Mini-chromosome genetic elements within the pCHR487 vector are set out in Table 12.

**Table 12 Donor Components of pCHR487**

Genetic Element	Size (base pair)	Location (bp)	Details
UBQ10 promoter	2038	361-2398	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> polyubiquitin promoter (At4g05320)
DsRed2 + NLS	780	2435-3214	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discosoma sp.</i> (Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
Pyruvate kinase terminator	332	3349-3680	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920)
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	3825-4641	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker
Act2 terminator	800	4823-5622	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Actin 2 terminator
NptII	795	5685-6479	Neomycin phosphotransferase II plant selectable marker
UBQ10 intron	359	6507-6865	PCR amplified <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> intron from UBQ10 gene (At4g05320) for stabilization of NptII gene transcript and increase protein expression levels
TEF2 Promoter	2000	6880-8879	<i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i> translation elongation factor alpha promoter for expression of NptII
LoxP	34	312-345 & 8898-8931	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)

In the pCHR488 mini-chromosome donor vector, the yeast TEF2 promoter of pCHR487 was replaced with the yeast GPD1 promoter which drove the plant selectable marker NptII. The yeast GPD1 promoter was PCR amplified from *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* genomic DNA using standard PCR methods. Standard cloning methods were also used to replace the TEF2 promoter and insert the yeast GPD1 promoter. For construction of mini-chromosomes, donor pCHR488 was generated as described for pCHR151. As with pCHR151, the circular donor pCHR488 lacks a bacterial origin of replication and the bacterial ampicillin selectable marker. The donor pCHR488 construct was used to construct plant mini-chromosomes as described for pCHR151. Mini-chromosome genetic elements within the pCHR488 vector are set-out in Table 13.

**Table 13 Donor Components of pCHR488**

Genetic Element	Size (base pair)	Location (bp)	Details
UBQ10 promoter	2038	361-2398	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> polyubiquitin promoter (At4g05320)
DsRed2 + NLS	780	2435-3214	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discosoma sp.</i> (Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
Pyruvate kinase terminator	332	3349-3680	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920)
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	3825-4641	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker
Act2 terminator	800	4823-5622	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Actin 2 terminator
NptII	795	5685-6479	Neomycin phosphotransferase II plant selectable marker
UBQ10 intron	359	6500-6859	PCR amplified <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> intron from UBQ10 gene (At4g05320) for stabilization of NptII gene transcript and increase protein expression levels
GPD1 Promoter	2000	6880-8879	<i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i> glycerol-3-phosphate dehydrogenase (NAD <sup>+</sup> ) promoter for expression of NptII
LoxP	34	312-345 & 8898-8931	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)

In the pCHR489 mini-chromosome donor vector, the yeast TEF2 promoter of pCHR487 was replaced with the *Drosophila melanogaster* Grim fly promoter for driving the plant selectable marker NptII. The Grim fly promoter was PCR amplified from *Drosophila melanogaster* genomic DNA using standard PCR methods. Standard cloning methods were used to replace the TEF2 promoter in pCHR487 with the Grim fly promoter to generate pCHR489. For construction of mini-chromosomes, donor pCHR489 was generated as described for pCHR151. As with pCHR151, the circular donor pCHR489 lacks a bacterial origin of replication and the bacterial ampicillin selectable marker. The donor pCHR489 construct was used to construct plant mini-chromosomes as described for pCHR151. Mini-chromosome genetic elements within the pCHR489 vector are set out in Table 14.



**Table 14 Donor Components of pCHR489**

Genetic Element	Size (base pair)	Location (bp)	Details
UBQ10 promoter	2038	361-2398	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> polyubiquitin promoter (At4g05320)
DsRed2 + NLS	780	2435-3214	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discosoma sp.</i> (Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
Pyruvate kinase terminator	332	3349-3680	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920)
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	3825-4641	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker
Act2 terminator	800	4823-5622	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Actin 2 terminator
NptII	795	5685-6479	Neomycin phosphotransferase II plant selectable marker
UBQ10 intron	359	6507-6865	PCR amplified <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> intron from UBQ10 gene (At4g05320) for stabilization of NptII gene transcript and increase protein expression levels
Grim Fly Promoter	2191	6880-8879	PCR amplified promoter of grim (AKA BcDNA:RE28551) from <i>Drosophila melanogaster</i>
LoxP	34	312-345 & 9081-9114	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)

**Vectors used to construct mini-chromosomes via standard cloning methods:****pCHR510**

As in pCHR151, pCHR510 contains DsRed with a nuclear localization signal and is regulated by the *Arabidopsis* UBQ10 promoter. The *Arabidopsis* pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920) was replaced by standard cloning procedures with the *Arabidopsis thaliana* triose phosphate isomerase terminator to prevent redundant use of the *Arabidopsis* pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920) in pCHR510. In addition, the *E. coli* *MerA* gene cassette was replaced with the plant selectable marker NptII regulated by the *Drosophila melanogaster* Grim fly promoter plus *Arabidopsis* UBQ10 intron and the *Arabidopsis* pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920). The vector also included a ZsGreen fluorescent gene (Clontech Corporation, Palo Alto CA) regulated by the *Arabidopsis* Act2 promoter plus

naturally occurring intron and the *Arabidopsis* Act2 terminator. The high-copy *E. coli* backbone of pUC19 and ampicillin bacterial selectable marker were replaced with the low copy pBeloBAC11 backbone with the bacterial streptomycin resistance gene replacing the chloramphenicol resistance gene. An *Arabidopsis thaliana* ST11 subtelomeric fragment was introduced upstream of the Grim fly promoter to isolate the Grim fly promoter from possible promoter silencing when a centromere fragment was ligated into the donor vector. Mini-chromosome genetic elements within the pCHR510 vector are set out in Table 15 below.

**Table 15 pCHR510 DNA donor components**

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
Bacterial streptomycin resistance	10111	16912-17922	Bacterial selectable marker
ori2	67	19158-19224	F' plasmid origin of replication from <i>E. coli</i>
repE	755	19553-20308	mediation of replication complex at Ori2 (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopA	1166	20896-22062	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopB	971	22062-23033	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopC	517	23106-23623	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
LoxP	34	26-59 and 16212-16245	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)
ST11 subtelomeric DNA	4682	69-4750 (complementary)	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> subtelomeric DNA from Chromosome 5
Grim Promoter	2187	4766-6956	PCR amplified <i>Drosophila melanogaster</i> Grim gene promoter for expression of NptII gene in plants.

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
UBQ10 intron	359	6963-7322	PCR amplified <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> intron from UBQ10 gene (At4g05320) for stabilization of NptII gene transcript and increase protein expression levels.
NptII	795	7350-8144	Neomycin phosphotransferase II plant selectable marker
Pyruvate kinase terminator	332	8212-8543	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920)
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	8731-9547	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker
Act2 promoter + intron	1482	9690-11171	The <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> promoter Actin 2 plus natural intron.
ZsGreen	695	11195-11890	Matz <i>et.al.</i> <i>Nature Biotechnol.</i> 1999 Oct; 17:969
Act2 terminator	800	11931-12730	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Actin2 gene terminator.
Triose phosphate isomerase	450	12759-13208 (complementary)	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Triose phosphate isomerase gene terminator
DsRed2 + NLS	780	13343-14122 (complementary)	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discosoma sp.</i> (Matz, M <i>et. al</i> <i>Nat Biotechnol</i> 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
UBQ10 Promoter	2038	14159-16196 (complementary)	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> polyubiquitin promoter (At4g05320)

To construct mini-chromosomes using pCHR510, the vector was linearized using standard restriction digestion procedures. The *Brassica* centromere fragment from mini-chromosome BB5R4-1 was restriction digested using Not I and ligated into pCHR510 using standard cloning procedures to generate the mini-chromosome pCHR543. Mini-chromosomes were delivered into *E. coli* and grown in selective medium. Mini-chromosomes were extracted from bacteria and restriction digested to verify DNA composition and verify centromere insert size.

pCHR579

The pCHR579 mini-chromosome donor vector was constructed using the same method to construct the pCHR510, without replacing the bacterial chloramphenicol gene in the low copy pBeloBAC11 backbone. Using standard cloning methods the bacterial kanamycin gene was replaced with a bacterial kanamycin selectable marker surrounded by two plant telomere sequences and two unique I-PpoI homing endonuclease sequences as described in pCHR171A. Mini-chromosomes using pCHR579 were constructed as described for pCHR510 using BB5R4-1 centromeric DNA to construct pCHR591. pCHR591 was linearized as described for mini-chromosomes described above for pCHR171A. Mini-chromosome genetic elements within the pCHR579 vector are set out in Table 16 below.

**Table 16 pCHR579 DNA donor components**

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
Bacterial chloramphenicol resistance	660	18022-18681	Bacterial selectable marker
ori2	67	19685-19751	F factor origin of replication from <i>E. coli</i>
repE	755	20080-20835	mediation of replication complex at Ori2 (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopA	1166	214230-22589	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopB	971	22589-23560	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopC	517	23633-24150	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
LoxP	34	26-59	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abrenski et. al 1984)

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
ST11 sub-telomeric DNA	4682	69-4750 (complementary)	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> subtelomeric DNA from Chromosome 5
Grim Fly Promoter	2187	4766-6956	PCR amplified <i>Drosophila melanogaster</i> Grim gene promoter for expression of NptII gene in plants.
UBQ10 intron	359	6963-7322	PCR amplified <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> intron from UBQ10 promoter (At4g05320) for stabilization of NptII gene transcript and increase protein expression levels.
NptII	795	7350-8144	Kanamycin plant selectable marker
Pyruvate kinase terminator	332	8212-8543	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920)
Plant telomere	759	8598-9356	Plant telomere PCR based on plant consensus telomere sequence
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	9532-10348	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker
Plant telomere	759	10482-11241	Plant telomere PCR based on plant consensus telomere sequence
Act2 promoter + intron	1482	11287-12768	The <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> promoter Actin 2 plus natural intron.
ZsGreen	695	12792-13487	<i>Matz et.al. Nature Biotechnol. 1999 Oct; 17:969</i>
Act2 terminator	800	13528-14327	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Actin2 gene terminator.
Triose phosphate isomerase	450	14356-14805 (complementary)	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Triose phosphate isomerase gene terminator

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
DsRed2 + NLS	780	14940-15719 (complementary)	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discosoma sp.</i> (Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
UBQ10 Promoter	2038	15756-17793 (complementary)	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> polyubiquitin promoter (At4g05320)

### pCHR581

The pCHR581 mini-chromosome donor vector was constructed using standard cloning procedures. The vector was constructed as pCHR579 with no ST11 sub-telomeric DNA. Mini-chromosome genetic elements within the pCHR581 vector are set out in Table 17 below.

ST9 is an *Arabidopsis thaliana* sub-telomeric sequence from centromere 5 (bases 3708-195 (3513 bp); Database: ATH1\_chr5.1con), which was amplified with the following oligo nucleotides: CHHZ-199 (GGTGGTCGGCCGAGCACAA GCGGGCCAAGCCCATGCTTG; SEQ ID NO: 29) and CHHZ-202 (GGTGGTCGGCCGCGAGGTTGCATATGAATCTTTA ACTGACAG; SEQ ID NO: 30). ST10 is an *Arabidopsis thaliana* sub-telomeric sequence from centromere 5 (bases 195-3708 (3513 bp); Database: ATH1\_chr5.1con), which was amplified with the following oligo nucleotides: CHHZ-200 (GGTGGTCGGCCGCGAGCACAAAGCGGGCCAAGCCCATGCTTG; SEQ ID NO: 31) and CHHZ-201 (GGTGGTCGGCCGTCAGGTTGCATATGAATCTT TAACTGACAG; SEQ ID NO: 32). ST11 is an *Arabidopsis thaliana* sub-telomeric sequence from centromere 5 (bases 26,987,774-26,992,453 (4681 bp); Database: ATH1\_chr5.1con), which was amplified with the following oligo nucleotides: CHHZ-203 (GGTGGTCGGCCGTCGTCGGCACTTGGCAGCGAAATCTCC; SEQ ID NO: 33) and CHHZ-206 (GGTGGTCGGCCGCATTATCATATAATTATGTTT TGCTGCTTC; SEQ ID NO: 34). ST12 is an *Arabidopsis thaliana* sub-telomeric sequence from centromere 5 (bases 26,992,453-26,987,774 (4681 bp); Database: ATH1\_chr5.1con), which was amplified with the following oligo nucleotides: CHHZ-204 (GGTGGTCGGCCGCGTCGGCACTTGGCAGCGAAATCTCC; SEQ ID NO: 35) and CHHZ-205 (GGTGGTCGGCCGATTATCATATAATTATGT

TTTGCTGCTTC: SEQ ID NO: 36). These sub-telomeric sequences were included in the pCRR581 vector.

**Table 17 pCHR581 DNA donor components**

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
Bacterial chloramphenicol resistance	660	13333-13992	Bacterial selectable marker
ori2	67	14996-15062	F' plasmid origin of replication from <i>E. coli</i>
repE	755	15391-16146	mediation of replication complex at Ori2 (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopA	1166	16734-17900	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopB	971	17900-18871	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopC	517	18944-19461	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
LoxP	34	26-59	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)
Grim Promoter	2187	77-2267	PCR amplified <i>Drosophila melanogaster</i> Grim gene promoter for expression of NptII gene in plants
UBQ10 intron	359	2274-2633	PCR amplified Arabidopsis thaliana intron from UBQ10 gene (At4g05320) for stabilization of NptII gene transcript and increase protein expression levels.
NptII	795	2661-3455	Neomycin phosphotransferase II plant selectable marker
Pyruvate kinase terminator	332	3523-3854	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920)
Plant telomere	759	3909-4667	Plant telomere PCR based on plant consensus telomere sequence

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	4843-5659	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker
Plant telomere	759	5793-6552	Plant telomere PCR based on plant consensus telomere sequence
Act2 promoter + intron	1482	6598-8079	The <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> promoter Actin 2 plus natural intron.
ZsGreen	695	8103-8798	<i>Matz et.al. Nature Biotechnol. 1999 Oct; 17:969</i>
Act2 terminator	800	8839-9638	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Actin2 gene terminator.
Triose phosphate isomerase	450	9667-10116 (complementary)	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Triose phosphate isomerase gene terminator
DsRed2 + NLS	780	10251-11030 (complementary)	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discosoma sp.</i> ( <i>Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227</i> ).
UBQ10 Promoter	2038	11067-13104 (complementary)	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> polyubiquitin promoter (At4g05320)

### pCHR806

The pCHR806 mini-chromosome vector was constructed using standard cloning procedures. The vector was composed similarly to that of pCHR510 using the pBeloBAC11 low copy backbone containing the bacterial chloramphenicol gene and without the addition of the ST11 sub-telomeric DNA. An additional plant gene cassette was introduced containing the *Anemonia sp.* cyan fluorescence (AmCyan) gene regulated by the tomato Lat52 promoter and terminator. Mini-chromosome genetic elements within the pCHR806 vector are set out in Table 18.



Table 18 pCHR806

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
Bacterial chloramphenicol resistance	660	13372-14031	Bacterial selectable marker
ori2	67	15035-15101	F' plasmid origin of replication from <i>E. coli</i>
repE	755	15430-16185	mediation of replication complex at Ori2 (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopA	1166	16773-17939	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopB	971	17939-18910	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopC	517	18983-19500	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
LoxP	34	26-59	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)
Grim Promoter	2187	77-2267	PCR amplified <i>Drosophila melanogaster</i> Grim gene promoter for expression of NptII gene in plants.
UBQ10 intron	359	2274-2633	PCR amplified Arabidopsis thaliana intron from UBQ10 gene (At4g05320) for stabilization of NptII gene transcript and increase protein expression levels.
NptII	795	2661-3455	Neomycin phosphotransferase II plant selectable marker
Pyruvate kinase terminator	332		<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920)
Lat52 terminator	200	3883-4082 (complementary)	Tomato Lat52 terminator
AmCyan	690	4123-4812 (complementary)	Visible cyan fluorescent protein from <i>Anemonia majano</i> (Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
Tomato Lat52 promoter	668	4836-5503 (complementary)	Tomato Lat52 promoter
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	5678-6494	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
Act2 promoter + intron	1482	6637-8118	The <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> promoter Actin 2 plus natural intron.
ZsGreen	695	8142-8837	Matz et.al. <i>Nature Biotechnol.</i> 1999 Oct; 17:969
Act2 terminator	800	8878-9677	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Actin2 gene terminator.
Triose phosphate isomerase	450	9706-10155	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Triose phosphate isomerase gene terminator
DsRed2 + NLS	780	10290-11069 (complementary)	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discosoma</i> sp. (Matz, M et. al <i>Nat Biotechnol</i> 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
UBQ10 Promoter	2038	11106-13143 (complementary)	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> polyubiquitin promoter (At4g05320)

### pCHR807

The pCHR807 mini-chromosome donor vector was constructed using standard cloning procedures and is identical to pCHR806. The vector was composed similar to that of pCHR510 using the pBelloBAC11 low copy backbone containing the bacterial chloramphenicol gene and without the addition of the ST11 sub-telomeric DNA. An additional plant gene cassette was introduced containing the *Zoanthus* sp. yellow fluorescent gene (ZsYellow) regulated by the tomato Lat52 promoter and terminator.. Mini-chromosome genetic elements within the pCHR807 vector are set out in Table 19.

**Table 19 pCHR807 DNA donor components**

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
Bacterial chloramphenicol resistance	660	13378-14037	Bacterial selectable marker
ori2	67	15041-15107	F' plasmid origin of replication from <i>E. coli</i>
repE	755	15436-16191	mediation of replication complex at Ori2 (Mori, H et. al, <i>J Mol Biol.</i> 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopA	1166	16779-17945	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, <i>J Mol Biol.</i> 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
SopB	971	17945-18916	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopC	517	18989-19506	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
LoxP	34	26-59	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)
Grim Promoter	2187	77-2267	PCR amplified <i>Drosophila melanogaster</i> Grim gene promoter for expression of NptII gene in plants.
UBQ10 intron	359	2274-2633	PCR amplified Arabidopsis thaliana intron from UBQ10 gene (At4g05320) for stabilization of NptII gene transcript and increase protein expression levels.
NptII	795	2661-3455	Neomycin phosphotransferase II plant selectable marker
Pyruvate kinase terminator	332	3523-2854	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920)
Lat52 terminator	200	3883-4082 (complementary)	Tomato Lat52 terminator
ZsYellow	696	4123-4818 (complementary)	Visible yellow fluorescent protein from <i>Zoanthus sp.</i> (Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
Tomato Lat52 promoter	668	4842-5509	Tomato Lat52 promoter
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	5684-6500	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker
Act2 promoter + intron	1482	6643-8124	The <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> promoter Actin 2 plus natural intron.
ZsGreen	695	8148-8843	Matz et.al. Nature Biotechnol. 1999 Oct; 17:969
Act2 terminator	800	8884-9683	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Actin2 gene terminator.
Triose phosphate isomerase	450	9712-10161	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Triose phosphate isomerase gene terminator

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
DsRed2 + NLS	780	10296-11075	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discozona</i> sp. (Matz, M et. al <i>Nat Biotechnol</i> 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
UBQ10 Promoter	2038	11112-13149	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> polyubiquitin promoter (At4g05320)

### pCHR808

The pCHR808 mini-chromosome donor vector was constructed using standard cloning procedures and is identical to pCHR806, but with the addition of the *Arabidopsis thaliana* ST9 sub-telomeric DNA. The ST9 sub-telomeric fragment was introduced upstream of the Grim fly promoter to isolate the Grim fly promoter from possible promoter silencing when a centromere fragment is ligated into the donor vector. Mini-chromosome genetic elements within the pCHR808 vector are set out in Table 20.

**Table 20 pCHR808 DNA donor components**

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
Bacterial chloramphenicol resistance	660	16892-17551	Bacterial selectable marker
ori2	67	18555-18621	F' plasmid origin of replication from <i>E. coli</i>
repE	755	18950-19705	mediation of replication complex at Ori2 (Mori, H et. al, <i>J Mol Biol.</i> 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopA	1166	20293-21459	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, <i>J Mol Biol.</i> 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopB	971	21459-22430	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, <i>J Mol Biol.</i> 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopC	517	22503-23020	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, <i>J Mol Biol.</i> 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
LoxP	34	26-59	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)
ST9 subtelomeric DNA	3513	69-3581	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> subtelomeric DNA from Chromosome 5
Grim Promoter	2187	3597-5787	PCR amplified <i>Drosophila melanogaster</i> Grim gene promoter for expression of NptII gene in plants.
UBQ10 intron	359	5794-6153	PCR amplified <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> intron from UBQ10 gene (At4g05320) for stabilization of NptII gene transcript and increase protein expression levels.
NptII	795	6181-6975	Neomycin phosphotransferase II plant selectable marker
Pyruvate kinase terminator	332	7043-7374	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920)
Lat52 terminator	200	7403-7602 (complementary)	Tomato Lat52 terminator
AmCyan	690	7643-8332	Visible cyan fluorescent protein from <i>Anemonia majano</i> (Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
Tomato Lat52 promoter	668	8356-9023 (complementary)	Tomato Lat52 promoter
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	9198-10014	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker
Act2 promoter + intron	1482	10157-11638	The <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> promoter Actin 2 plus natural intron.
ZsGreen	695	11662-12357	Matz et.al. Nature Biotechnol. 1999 Oct; 17:969

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
Act2 terminator	800	12398-13197	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Actin2 gene terminator.
Triose phosphate isomerase	450	13226-13675	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Triose phosphate isomerase gene terminator
DsRed2 + NLS	780	13810-14589	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discosoma</i> sp. (Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
UBQ10 Promoter	2038	14626-16663	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> polyubiquitin promoter (At4g05320)

### pCHR945

The pCHR945 mini-chromosome donor vector was constructed using standard cloning procedures and is identical to pCHR807 with the replacement of the bacterial kanamycin gene with a bacterial kanamycin selectable marker gene surrounded by two plant telomere sequences and two unique I-Ppo I homing endonuclease sequences as described in pCHR171A. Mini-chromosomes using pCHR945 were constructed as described for pCHR510 using BB5R4-1 centromeric DNA to construct pCHR955. pCHR955 was linearized as described for mini-chromosomes constructed with pCHR171A. Mini-chromosome genetic elements within the pCHR845 vector are set out in Table 21.

**Table 21 pCHR945 DNA donor components**

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
Bacterial chloramphenicol resistance	660	14992-15651	Bacterial selectable marker
ori2	67	16655-16721	F <sup>+</sup> plasmid origin of replication from <i>E. coli</i>
repE	755	17050-17805	mediation of replication complex at Ori2 (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopA	1166	18393-19559	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
SopB	971	19559-20530	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
SopC	517	20603-21120	partition of plasmid to bacterial daughter cells (Mori, H et. al, J Mol Biol. 1986 Nov 5;192(1):1-15)
LoxP	34	26-59	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)
Grim Promoter	2187	77-2267	PCR amplified <i>Drosophila melanogaster</i> Grim gene promoter for expression of NptII gene in plants.
UBQ10 intron	359	2274-2633	PCR amplified Arabidopsis thaliana intron from UBQ10 gene (At4g05320) for stabilization of NptII gene transcript and increase protein expression levels.
NptII	795	2661-3455	Neomycin phosphotransferase II plant selectable marker
Pyruvate kinase terminator	332	3523-3854	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920)
Lat52 terminator	200	3883-4082 (complementary)	Tomato Lat52 terminator
ZsYellow	696	4123-4818 (complementary)	Visible yellow fluorescent protein from <i>Zoanthus sp.</i> (Matz, M et. al Nat. Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
Tomato Lat52 promoter	668	4842-5509 (complementary)	Tomato Lat52 promoter
Plant telomere	759	5568-6326	Plant telomere PCR based on plant consensus telomere sequence
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	6502-7318	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker
Plant telomere	759	7452-8211	Plant telomere PCR based on plant consensus telomere sequence
Act2 promoter + intron	1482	8257-9738	The <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> promoter Actin 2 plus natural intron.
ZsGreen	695	9762-10457	Matz et.al. Nature Biotechnol. 1999 Oct; 17:969
Act2 terminator	800	10498-11297	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Actin2 gene terminator.

Genetic Element	Size (base pairs)	Location (bp)	Details
Triose phosphate isomerase terminator	450	11326-11775 (complementary)	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Triose phosphate isomerase gene terminator
DsRed2 + NLS	780	11910-12689 (complementary)	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discosoma sp.</i> (Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
UBQ10 Promoter	2038	12726-14763 (complementary)	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> polyubiquitin promoter (At4g05320)

#### Other vectors

The pCHR809 mini-chromosome donor vector was constructed using standard cloning procedures and is identical to pCHR807, but with the addition of the *Arabidopsis thaliana* ST9 sub-telomeric DNA. The ST9 sub-telomeric fragment was introduced upstream of the Grim fly promoter to isolate the Grim fly promoter from possible promoter silencing when a centromere fragment was ligated into the donor vector.

The pCHR810 mini-chromosome donor vector was constructed using standard cloning procedures and is identical to pCHR806, but with the addition of the *Arabidopsis thaliana* ST10 sub-telomeric DNA. The ST10 sub-telomeric fragment was introduced upstream of the Grim fly promoter to isolate the Grim fly promoter from possible promoter silencing when a centromere fragment was ligated into the donor vector.

The pCHR811 mini-chromosome donor vector was constructed using standard cloning procedures and is identical to pCHR807, but with the addition of the *Arabidopsis thaliana* ST10 sub-telomeric DNA. The ST10 sub-telomeric fragment was introduced upstream of the Grim fly promoter to isolate the Grim fly promoter from possible promoter silencing when a centromere fragment was ligated into the donor vector.

The pCHR813 mini-chromosome donor vector was constructed using standard cloning procedures and is identical to pCHR807, but with the addition of the *Arabidopsis thaliana* ST11 sub-telomeric DNA. The ST11 sub-telomeric fragment was introduced upstream of the Grim fly promoter to isolate the Grim fly promoter



from possible promoter silencing when a centromere fragment was ligated into the donor vector.

The pCHR814 mini-chromosome donor vector was constructed using standard cloning procedures and is identical to pCHR806, but with the addition of the *Arabidopsis thaliana* ST11 sub-telomeric DNA. The ST12 sub-telomeric fragment was introduced upstream of the Grim fly promoter to isolate the Grim fly promoter from possible promoter silencing when a centromere fragment was ligated into the donor vector.

The pCHR815 mini-chromosome donor vector was constructed using standard cloning procedures and is identical to pCHR807, but with the addition of the *Arabidopsis thaliana* ST11 sub-telomeric DNA. The ST12 sub-telomeric fragment was introduced upstream of the Grim fly promoter to isolate the Grim fly promoter from possible promoter silencing when a centromere fragment was ligated into the donor vector.

The pCHR948 mini-chromosome donor vector was constructed using standard cloning procedures and is identical to pCHR810 with the replacement of the bacterial kanamycin gene with a bacterial kanamycin selectable marker gene surrounded by two plant telomere sequences and two unique I-Ppo I homing endonuclease sequences as described in pCHR171A. Mini-chromosomes using pCHR948 were constructed as described for pCHR510 using BB5R4-1 centromeric DNA. pCHR958 was linearized as described for mini-chromosomes constructed with pCHR171A.

### Example 3

#### Mini-chromosome Delivery into *Brassica* Cells

Various methods may be used to deliver DNA into plant cells. These include biological methods, such as *Agrobacterium* and viruses, physical methods such as biolistic particle bombardment and silicon carbide whiskers, electrical methods such as electroporation, and chemical methods such as the use of polyethylene glycol and other compounds known to stimulate DNA uptake into cells. *Agrobacterium* and biolistic particle bombardment have been the methods that have found most widespread use in plant biotechnology. See, e.g., Broothaerts, et. al. Nature 433: 629-633, 2005.

**Biolistic particle delivery of mini-chromosomes**

A biolistic delivery method using wet gold particles kept in an aqueous DNA suspension was adapted from the teachings of Milahe and Miller (Biotechniques 16: 924-931, 1994) and used to transform *B. oleracea* (Broccoli) cells. To prepare the wet gold particles for bombardment, 1.0  $\mu\text{m}$  gold particles were washed by mixing with 100% ethanol on a vortex followed by spinning the particles in a microfuge at 4000 rpm in order to remove supernatant. Subsequently, the gold particles were washed with sterile distilled water three times, followed by spinning in a microfuge to remove supernatant. The washed gold particles were resuspend in sterile distilled water at a final concentration of 90 mg/ml and stored at 4 °C until use. For bombardment, the gold particle suspension (90 mg/ml) was then mixed rapidly with 1  $\mu\text{g}/\mu\text{l}$  DNA solution (in dH<sub>2</sub>O or TE), 2.5M CaCl<sub>2</sub>, and 1M spermidine. When two or more plasmids were contained within the DNA solution, equal amounts of each plasmids was added to the gold suspension.

To prepare explant tissues for DNA delivery, three days prior to bombardment, an internode of the *Brassica* plant (Broccoli) were cut. The internode explant was cut longitudinally with a scalpel to cut a thin slice (1/6-1/4 of the internode) off one side of the explant. The prepared internodes were placed wound side down on Petri dishes with regeneration media. The Petri dishes were wrapped with tape and placed wound side up under the light. The explants grew for 3 days prior to bombardment.

For bombardment of *Brassica* suspension cells, the cells were harvested by centrifugation (1200 rpm for 2 minutes) on the day of bombardment. The cells were plated onto 50 mm circular polyester screen cloth disks placed on petri plates with solid medium. The solid medium used was the same medium that the cells are normally grown in (MS salts, Gamborg's vitamins, 3% sucrose, 2 mg/liter 2,4D (2,4-Dichlorophenoxyacetic acid), 0.5 mM MES pH 5.8 +(solid medium only), plus 0.26% gelrite, or 0.6% tissue culture agar, added before autoclaving. Approximately 1.5 ml packed cells were placed on each filter disk, and dispersed uniformly into a very even spot approximately 1 inch in diameter.

Bombardment of the cells was carried out in the BioRad PDS-1000/He Biolistic Particle Delivery System (BioRad). The DNA/gold suspension was resuspended and immediately inserted onto the grid of the filter holder. A 50 mm

circular polyester screen cloth disk containing the cells was placed into a fresh 60 mm petri dish and the cells were covered with a 10x10 cm square of sterile nylon or Dacron chiffon netting. The metal cylinder was inserted into the petri dish and used to push the netting down to the bottom of the dish. This weight prevented the cells from being dislodged from the plate during bombardment. The petri dish containing the cells was then placed onto the sample holder, and positioned in the sample chamber of the gene gun and bombarded with the DNA/gold suspension. After the bombardment, the cells were scraped off the filter circle in the petri dish containing solid medium with a sterile spatula and transferred to fresh medium in a 125 ml blue-capped glass bottle. The bottles were transferred onto a shaker and grown while shaking at 150 rpm.

A biolistic delivery method using dry gold particles was also carried out to deliver mini-chromosomes to *Brassica* cells. For this method, 1.0 or 0.6  $\mu$  gold particles were washed in 70% ethanol with vigorous shaking on a vortex for 3 to 5 minutes, followed by an soaking in 70% ethanol for 15 minutes. The gold particles were spun in a microfuge to remove the supernatant and washed three times in sterile distilled water. The gold particles were suspended in 50% glycerol at a concentration of 60 mg/ml and stored at 4°C. For bombardment, the dry gold particles were resuspended on a vortex for 5 minutes to disrupt agglomerated particles. Subsequently, the dry gold particles were mixed rapidly with DNA, 2.5M CaCl<sub>2</sub> and 0.2M spermidine in a siliconized, sterile eppendorf tube. The sample was allowed to settle for 1 minute and then spun in a microfuge for 10 seconds to remove supernatant. Subsequently, the DNA/gold particles were washed once with 70% ethanol, followed by two washed in 100% ethanol. A portion of the DNA/gold mixture was evenly placed on a macrocarrier. The macrocarrier was then placed in the BioRad PDS-1000/He Biolistic Particle Delivery System, and the bombardment was done at rupture disk pressures ranging from 450 psi to 2,200 psi. The dry biolistic method did not result in the generation of adchromosomal plants or cell lines.

#### **Example 4**

##### **Selection of *Brassica* Cell Clones Stably Containing Mini-chromosome DNA Use of visible marker genes**

The presence of visible marker genes allowed for visual selection of *Brassica* cells stably containing mini-chromosome DNA because any adchromosomal

cells or cell clusters were readily identified by virtue of fluorescent protein expression.

Transient assays were used to test mini-chromosomes for their ability to become established in cells following DNA delivery, and for their ability to be inherited in mitotic cell divisions. Expression of a visible marker encoded by a gene present on the mini-chromosome, such as a fluorescent protein gene, is used to detect mini-chromosome presence in the cell, and to follow mitotic inheritance of the mini-chromosome. In this assay, mini-chromosomes were delivered to *Brassica* cells of a population that is undergoing cell division, in this case *Brassica* suspension cells grown in liquid culture.

After DNA delivery, the cell population was monitored for fluorescent protein expression over the course of one to several weeks. Mini-chromosomes containing active centromeres were observed through the formation of fluorescent cell clusters, which were derived from a single progenitor cell that had divide and passed the mini-chromosomes to its daughter cells. Accordingly, single fluorescent cells and clusters of fluorescent cells of various sizes were scored in the growing cell population after DNA delivery. A total of 25 *Brassica* mini-chromosomes (see Table 23), constructed using the cre-lox assembly process, were tested in this manner in several different *Brassica* cell lines. A number of mini-chromosomes showed indications of stable mitotic inheritance in this assay and are listed in Table 22; in addition several stable cell lines were obtained from suspension cell lines following the delivery of the same mini-chromosomes; these are also listed in Table 22.

**Table 22 Preferred *Brassica* BACs, centromeres (CEN), and mini-chromosomes (MC) based upon transient expression assays and generation of stable *Brassica* cell lines**

BAC Number	CEN Number	MC Number	BAC Class	Stable clones generated	# of times tested in transient deliveries	# of positive transient deliveries
BB5	BB5R4-1	BB5R4-1	Hi CANREP, Meth	7	3	2
BB16	BB16R1-2	BB16R1-2	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	0	2	1
	BB16R1-3	BB16R1-3		1	1	1
BB18	BB18R1-2	BB18R1-2	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	1	1	1
	BB18R2-3	BB18R2-3		1	4	2

BAC Number	CEN Number	MC Number	BAC Class	Stable clones generated	# of times tested in transient deliveries	# of positive transient deliveries
BB38	BB38R1-3	BB38R1-3	Hi CANREP only	0	4	3
BB47	BB47R1-2	BB47R1-2	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	0	4	2
BB60	BB60R1-1	BB60R1-1	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	1	3	3
BB63	BB63R1-1	BB63R1-1	Hi CANREP, Meth (Hpa)	1	5	4
BB70	BB70R1-3	BB70R1-3	Hi CANREP, Moderate Meth	0	4	2
BB71	BB71R1-3	BB71R1-1	Hi CANREP, Meth (Sau)	0	2	2
BB76	BB76R1-3	BB76R1-3	Hi CANREP, Moderate Meth	0	5	4
BB104	BB104R1-2	BB104R1-2	Hi CANREP, Moderate Meth	1	3	3

#### **Manipulation of adchromosomal tissue to homogeneity**

After identifying clusters of fluorescent cells in bombarded suspension cell cultures, physical manipulations were carried out to allow for the preferential expansion of cells harboring the delivered genes. Non-fluorescent tissue surrounding the fluorescent clusters was trimmed to avoid overgrowth of fluorescent cells by non-fluorescent ones, while retaining a minimum tissue size capable of rapid growth. These manipulations were performed under sterile conditions with the use of a fluorescence stereomicroscope that allows for visualization of the fluorescent cells and cell clumps in the larger pieces of tissue. In between the mechanical purification steps, the tissue was allowed growth on appropriate media, either in the presence or absence of selection. Over time, a pure population of fluorescent cells was obtained.

#### **Example 5**

##### **Regeneration of *Brassica* plants from adchromosomal cell clones**

A total of 28 *Brassica* mini-chromosomes were used in stable transformation to successfully regenerate transchromosomal broccoli plants that are listed in Table 23. These *Brassica* mini-chromosomes represent candidate *Brassica* centromere sequences for the delivery and transmission of stable *Brassica* mini-chromosomes. *B. oleracea* plant (broccoli) regeneration was achieved by cultivating pieces of sterile plant tissue (explants) on medium containing plant growth activators

(auxins, cytokinins and other compounds) that induce embryogenesis or shoot formation. Particularly, *Brassica* tissue proliferation was carried out with a medium containing high cytokinin regeneration medium (Murashige and Skooge salts, MES, sucrose, gelrite, Gamborg vitamins, 6-benzylaminopurine hydrochloride, non-essential amino acids, thidiazuron (TDZ) and silver nitrate, pH 5.7) through all culturing phases.

Table 23

Centromere	MC	config	# genes	# explants <sup>5</sup>	In Growth Room			visual <sup>2</sup>	PCR <sup>3</sup>	RT <sup>3</sup>	Western <sup>3</sup>
					size of cen	size of MC	# events	# plants			
BB15R4-1	964-4	O-O	4	77	60	80	1	1	1	0	1
BB15R4-1	965-1	O-O	4	93	55	80	1	2	1	0	1
BB16R1-2	967-1	O-O	4	105	55	60	1	1	0	0	1
BB221	BB221R2-1	O-O	2	78	59	70	1	2	0	0	1
BB222	BB222R2-7	O-O	2	102	49	60	1	2	1	0	0
BB229	BB229R2-6	O-O	2	118	49	60	3	8	2	0	1
BB280	BB280R2-3	O-O	2	79	86	97	3	6	2	0	3
BB5	BB5R10-1	I-I	2	337	48	65	1	1	1	0	0
BB5	BB5R14-6	O-O	2	213	52	68	1	1	1	0	0
BB5	BB5R15-4	O-O	2	144	52	68	1	2	1	0	0
BB5	BB5R16-6	O-O	2	152	50	66	2	6	1	1	1
BB5R4-1	543-6	O-O	3	101	50	74	2	4	1	0	0
BB5R4-1	591-1	I-O	3	76	50	75	1	2	1	0	0
BB5R4-1	591-1L	I-I	3	207	50	73	2	4	2	1	1
BB5R4-1	593-3L	I-I	3	78	50	69	1	4	1	1	1
BB5R4-1	593-4L	I-I	3	82	50	69	1	3	1	1	1
BB5	BB5R4-1	O-O	2	564	50	61	7	46	7	6	6
BB5R4-1	816-2	O-O	4	107	50	70	2	5	2	1	1
BB5R4-1	817-1	O-O	4	143	50	70	2	16	2	2	2
BB5R4-1	818-1	O-O	4	78	50	73	1	1	1	0	0
BB5R4-1	819-1	O-O	4	117	50	73	4	14	4	4	4
BB5R4-1	820-1	O-O	4	406	50	73	2	3	2	0	1
BB5R4-1	823-2	O-O	4	50	50	75	3	16	3	0	3

-140 -

BB5R4-1	824-9	O-O	4	129	50	75	2	4	✓	2	2	2
BB5R4-1	825-1	O-O	4	168	50	75	1	1	✓	0	0	1
BB5R4-1	958-2L	I-I	4	169	50	74	1	1	✓	1	0	1
BB60R1-1	972-5	O-O	4	123	60	80	1	2	✓	1	0	1
BB71	BB71R1-1	O-O	2	162	24	35	1	3	✓	1	1	1
integrative	489	O-O	2	306	0	11	1	1	✓	1	1	1
SB38R2-2	986-1	O-O	2	61	63	83	3	5	✓	3	0	3
								167				



After bombardment, explants were returned to the high cytokinin regeneration medium with the wound side down on the plate. The explants were transferred to selection medium (regeneration medium containing 150  $\mu$ M HgCl<sub>2</sub> or 100 mg/L of kanamycin) three days after bombardment with wound side up. The explants were visually screened under a fluorescent dissecting microscope for red fluorescent cluster formation 10 days after selection was started. In addition to facilitating the transient assays, the use of fluorescent protein expression allowed for the use of sub-killing concentrations of selective agent during growth of plant tissue on selective medium. This flexibility allowed for the use of a wider range of antibiotic concentrations than possible in the absence of a visible marker gene, without having to consider the amount of background growth observed in wild type plant tissue. Fluorescent cell clusters could be visually identified after one to several weeks of growth on selective media. Clusters with some unmodified surrounding explant tissue were carved out and placed on medium containing 50  $\mu$ M HgCl<sub>2</sub> or 50 mg/L of kanamycin.

The subcultures were continued on selection medium and the non-modified tissues were parsed out from the clusters every week for a month. Once the clusters were approximately 3 mm in size, they were cultured on regeneration medium without any Hg or kanamycin in order to induce shoot regeneration. Subsequently, shoot primordia were transferred to seed germination medium for enlargement and expansion. Once the shoots elongated and developed about 2-4 leaves, the shoots with the leaves were cut off for rooting in rooting medium (MS salts, sucrose, 0.7% tissue culture agar and non-essential amino acids, pH 5.7). Once the shoots developed good root systems, they were potted and transferred to a plant growth facility.

#### **Example 6** **Regeneration of *B. napus* (Canola) Plants Modified with** **Mini-chromosome DNA**

The biolistic delivery method using dry gold particles, described in example 3, was used to deliver mini-chromosomes to *B. napus* hypocotyl sections for the purpose of regenerating modified *B. napus* (hereinafter "canola") plants. The canola hypocotyls were modified with mini-chromosomes generated with *Brassica* centromere inserts described in Example 1 using the vectors described in Example 1.

Canola seeds were grown in germination medium (1x Murashige and Skoog (MS) salts, 1x micro-salts with Gamborg's B5 vitamins (B5), 2 % sucrose, 2 g/liter gelrite, pH 5.8) for one week. The resulting hypocotyls were harvested and sliced longitudinally; the pieces were cultured on callus induction medium (1x MS salts, 1x MS vitamins, 1 mg/liter 2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid (2,4D), 3 % sucrose, 2 g/liter gelrite, pH 5.8) for 7 days.

The hypocotyls were bombarded with dry gold particle/DNA suspensions as described in Example 2 using 1300 psi rupture disks; the bombarded tissues were returned to callus induction medium for 3 days and then transferred to callus induction medium containing 10 mg/ml of G418. They were kept on this medium with sub-culturing every 1-2 weeks for 4-6 weeks. The subcultures were then visually analyzed for expression of the fluorescent protein as described in Example 3.

Cultures positive for expression of the fluorescent protein were further subcultured on callus induction medium containing 10 mg/ml of G418 for 4-6 weeks. During this time, fluorescent tissue was selectively isolated from non-fluorescent tissue by manipulation. Subsequently, the positive tissues were transferred to organogenesis induction media (MS salts, B5 vitamins, 6-benzylaminopurine, zeatin, sucrose, g/l gelrite, pH 5.8) containing 10 mg/ml of G418) and were kept on this medium until shoots appeared. The shoots were grown in hormone-free media to promote normal shoot development.

Developing green shoots with a defined morphology were excised and incubated in shoot elongation medium, differing from organogenesis medium by having lower cytokinin concentrations. Most callus was removed from the developing shoots, which were subcultured in fresh shoot elongation medium every 2-3 weeks. As the developing shoots became normal and exhibited apical dominance, they were transferred to rooting medium containing indolebutyric acid; the remaining callus was removed also at this time. The shoots were arranged to stand in the medium with an exposed apex. The roots began to appear in 1-3 weeks.

The rooted shoots were transferred to soil in which the basal portion of the plant was planted to soil to grow out. The shoot were gently removed from the agar and large chunks of agar were removed by rinsing gently in tap water. The roots

were placed in wet RediEarth or other suitable growth medium. Roots were covered with the growth medium and packed gently. The shoots were hardened-off and acclimated to growing in soil by covering the shoot with a clear container. The shoots were placed into a greenhouse or plant growth room. After being covered for 3-4 days, the shoots were gradually exposed to room air by partial removal of the cover. Once the plant stopped wilting, the cover was removed entirely.

Several adchromosomal events and approximately 30 adchromosomal plants were obtained by this protocol; these are further discussed in example 12 and table 45. To visually analyze the presence of the marker gene in *Brassica* cells or tissue, a piece of leaf or other plant part was removed from a modified and control (non-modified) *Brassica* plant. The leaf or plant part was then examined with a fluorescence stereo-microscope using 20-100x magnification and a rhodamine filter set..

#### **Example 7**

##### **Tomato Centromere Discovery and Mini-chromosome Construction BAC library construction**

A Bacterial Artificial Chromosome (BAC) library was constructed from Tomato genomic DNA isolated from Tomato variety "Microtom" and digested with the restriction enzyme MboI. This enzyme was chosen because it is methylation insensitive and therefore can be used to enrich BAC libraries for centromere DNA sequences.

##### **Probe Identification and Selection**

Tomato repetitive genomic or plastid sequences, including specific centromere-localized sequences, were initially compiled as candidate probes for hybridization with the BAC libraries. These probes represented various classes of Tomato repetitive sequences including satellite repeats (heterochromatic/ centromere-specific), rDNA, and hypermethylated and highly repetitive DNA fractions.

Six probes were picked to interrogate the BAC libraries. These probes represent different groups of commonly found repetitive sequences in the Tomato genome. The probes selected are shown in Table 24 and were LESAT (the Tomato centromere satellite, in two different variants; SEQ ID NOS: 37 and 38), a tomato microsatellite (LEGATAREP; SEQ ID NO: 39), HpaII (bulk methylated DNA purified from genomic DNA by failure to digest with the methylation-sensitive

enzyme HpaII), bulk repetitive DNA purified from genomic DNA by reassociation kinetics (Cot), and telomere. The probes were prepared by PCR, from cloned fragments, or from bulk methylated or repetitive DNA prepared from Tomato genomic DNA. The telomere probe sequence (SEQ ID NO: 40) was generated by PCR using the following primers: CHHZ-97 (AGGCGCGCCACCTGCAGGA GAGCTCGGTCTCA TCGAGACAC; SEQ ID NO: 41) and CHHZ-98 (GGTCGACGGCCCGGGCGTT TAAACCCGGGCTCAC; SEQ ID NO: 42). Probes were prepared and labeled with standard molecular biology methods.

<b>Table 24 Tomato Repetitive Sequences and BAC Library Probes</b>					
<b>group #</b>	<b>group name</b>	<b>probe name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>clone used for hyb</b>	<b>GenBank accession*</b>
1	centromere repeat	TC2 (SEQ ID NO: 37)	LESAT, tomato centromere satellite (different variant)	5012-5-11-C02	X87233.1
		TE1 (SEQ ID NO: 38)	LESAT, tomato centromere satellite (different variant)	5012-5-11-E01	X87233.1
2	micro-satellite repeat	TE12 (SEQ ID NO: 39)	LEGATAREP, tomato microsatellite repeat	5012-5-11-E12	X90937.1
3	bulk repetitive DNA	TCot6	Purified repetitive DNA fraction	N/A	N/A
		T HpaII	Purified methylated DNA fraction	N/A	N/A
4	telomere	TTel (SEQ ID NO: 40)	Telomere	PCR product	N/A

\* Accession number of BLAST hit; actual sequence has not been deposited in Genbank

#### **Library Interrogation and Data Analysis**

The BAC clones from the libraries were spotted onto filters and these filters were hybridized with each of the probes to identify specific BAC clones that contain DNA from the group of sequences represented by the probe(s).

A total of 18,432 BAC clones from the library were interrogated with each of the probes described above using the following hybridization conditions: 0.5 x SSC 0.25% SDS at 65 degrees for 15 minutes, followed by a wash at 65 degrees for a half hour. The hybridization intensities of the BAC clones with each probe were

scanned to quantitate hybridization intensity for each clone. The outputs (scores of 1 to 10 based on the hybridization intensities, with 10 being the highest intensity) were imported into a relational database, for further analysis and classification. The database contained a total of five tables that were used for BAC selection. Each table contains a total of 18,432 entries: the hybridization scores of each BAC clone from the library to one of the probes used to interrogate the library. Data analysis was done using standard SQL (Structured Query Language) routines to find BACs that contain different groups of repetitive sequences.

### **Classification and Selection of BAC clones from Mini-chromosome Construction**

BAC clones containing centromeric/heterochromatic DNA were identified by their hybridization scores to different probes. The goal was to select BAC clones that contained a diverse set of various repetitive sequences. Eleven classes of centromeric BAC clones, some of which overlap, were eventually chosen to cover the broadest possible range of centromeric/heterochromatic sequences for mini-chromosome construction. Detailed descriptions of each class and probe hybridization values for each class are shown in Table 25.

**Table 25 Classification of tomato BAC clones containing centromeric DNA**

Class	Class Properties	Probe Hybridization Range				TEL	# clones identified
		LESAT C2	LESAT E1	LEGATA REP E12	Hpa II (METH)		
A	High Meth, E1, E12	N/A	>= 6	>= 6	>= 6	N/A	30
B	High Meth, E1, TEL	N/A	>= 7	N/A	>= 7	>= 7	36
C	High Meth, TEL; low C2	<=5	N/A	N/A	>= 7	>= 7	9
D	High Meth and E1	N/A	>=8	N/A	>=7	N/A	103
E	High Meth and E12	N/A	N/A	>= 6	>= 6	N/A	35
F	High E1 and E12	N/A	>= 6	>= 6	N/A	N/A	75

Class	Class Properties	Probe Hybridization Range				TEL	# clones identified
		LESAT C2	LESAT E1	LEGATA REP E12	Hpa II (METH)		
G	High E1 and TEL	N/A	$\geq 8$	N/A	N/A	$\geq 8$	8
H	High E1 only	N/A	$\geq 8$	$\leq 4$	$\leq 6$	N/A	89
I	High TEL only	N/A	$\leq 4$	N/A	$\leq 4$	$\geq 8$	49
J	High Meth only	N/A	N/A	$\leq 4$	$\geq 7$	$\leq 4$	15
K	High E12 only	N/A	N/A	$\geq 7$	$\leq 4$	$\leq 4$	2
<b>Total **</b>							<b>451</b>

\* Values represent hybridization intensities of an individual BAC to each probe on a scale of 1 to 10. Values were normalized

N/A = not applicable

A number of representative clones from each class were chosen to yield a total of 278 BAC clones for further analysis by restriction digest fingerprinting. The BAC clones were fingerprinted (Table 26) based on restriction sites found in the centromere specific sequence(s) as described in Example 1. The restriction enzyme *HinfI* was used to digest the BAC clones. After fingerprinting, 100 BACs were selected for further testing using the method described in Example 1.

*L. esculentum* (tomato) BAC TB99 was deposited with the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC) P.O. Box 1549 Manassas, VA 20108, USA on February 23, 2005 and assigned Accession No. \_\_\_\_\_.

Thirty BAC clones (from the original 278) were selected for mini-chromosome construction based on the fingerprint class which was defined as a simple or complex laddering pattern. Table 26 lists the fingerprint patterns for a selected set of 26 Tomato BAC clones. Tomato fingerprints were classified into 3 classes: 1. high complexity (multiple large bands with no indication of laddering), 2. low ladder (predominant bands at multiples of the unit repeat size for the centromere satellite, and 3. complex ladder (features of both previous types). Table 27 lists the fingerprint classes for 7 selected tomato BACs. The preferred BACS have an \*. Table 27 lists the fingerprint classes for 11 selected *Brassica* BACs.

**Table 26: Restriction Endonuclease Fingerprinting of 26 Tomato BACs**

BAC Number	BAC Class	Class Properties	Fingerprint Class*	MiniC tested
TB1	G	Hi LE SAT/Tel	2. Low ladder	TB1R4-3
TB4*	G	Hi LE SAT/Tel	2. Low ladder	TB4R1-2
TB6	J	Hi Hpa only	1. complex	TB6R4-1
TB10	I	Hi Tel only	1. complex	TB10R4-1
TB12	I	Hi Tel only	1. complex	TB12R1-1
TB16	F	Hi LESAT/LE Gata rep	2. Low ladder	TB16R4-5
TB17	J	Hi Hpa only	1. complex	TB17R1-1
TB21	D	Hi Hpa/LESAT	2. Low ladder	TB21R1-2
TB22	D	Hi Hpa/LESAT	2. Low ladder	TB22R1-1
TB23*	G	Hi LESAT/Tel	2. Low ladder	TB23R1-5
TB29	J	Hi Hpa only	3. complex/ladder	TB29R1-1
TB47	D	Hi Hpa/LESAT	2. Low ladder	TB47R1-1
TB55	B	Hi LESAT/Hpa/TEL	2. Low ladder	TB55R1-5
TB56	D	Hi Hpa/LESAT	3. complex/ladder	TB56R1-3
TB67	H	Hi LESAT only	2. Low ladder	TB67R1-1
TB72	H	Hi LESAT only	3. complex/ladder	TB72R1-3
TB73	D	Hi Hpa/LESAT	2. Low ladder	TB73R1-2
TB80*	D	Hi Hpa/LESAT	3. complex/ladder	TB80R1-2
TB82*	H	Hi LESAT only	2. Low ladder	TB82R1-4
TB91	H	Hi LESAT only	2. Low ladder	TB91R1-2
TB92	H	Hi LESAT only	3. complex/ladder	TB92R1-3
TB99*	H	Hi LESAT only	2. Low ladder	TB99R1-5
TB101*	B	Hi LESAT/Hpa/TEL	2. Low ladder	TB101R1-5
TB114	H	Hi LESAT only	2. Low ladder	TB114R1-1
TB115	H	Hi LESAT only	2. Low ladder	TB115R4-2
TB132*	F	Hi LESAT/LE Gata rep	2. Low ladder	TB132R1-3

**Table 27: Restriction endonuclease fingerprint classification for 7 selected tomato BACs**

BAC Number	Hyb Class	Class Properties	Fingerprint Class
TB4	G	Hi LE SAT/Tel	2. Low ladder
TB23	G	Hi LESAT/Tel	2. Low ladder
TB80	D	Hi Hpa/LESAT	3. complex/ladder
TB82	H	Hi LESAT only	2. Low ladder
TB99	H	Hi LESAT only	2. Low ladder
TB101	B	Hi LESAT/Hpa/TEL	2. Low ladder
TB132	F	Hi LESAT/LE Gata rep	2. Low ladder

### Construction of Mini-chromosomes

For each BAC identified above, a mini-chromosome was constructed using a Cre-Lox Recombination-Donor vectors as described in Example 2. Tomato mini-chromosomes were constructed from a total of 30 BACs using donor vector 151 and 153 in this assembly process, and were subsequently tested in several different tomato cell lines. Mini-chromosome genetic elements within the pCHR151 and pCHR153 vector are set out in Tables 10 and 28.

**Table 28 Donor Components of pCHR153**

Genetic Element	Size (base pair)	Location (bp)	Details
EF1 $\alpha$ A3 Promoter	2051	361-2411	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> elongation factor 1 alpha A3 promoter (At1g07940)
DsRed2 + NLS	780	2448-3227	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discosoma sp.</i> (Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
Pyruvate kinase terminator	332	3362-3693	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920)
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	3838-4654	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker
Act2 terminator	800	4836-5635	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Actin 2 terminator
MerA	1695	5789-7483	Plant selectable marker providing resistance to mercuric ions (Rugh et. al. PNAS 1996 93:3182)
Act2 promoter + intron	1482	7486-8967	The <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> promoter Actin 2 plus natural intron
LoxP	34	312-345 & 8984-9017	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)

### **Example 8**

#### **Testing of tomato mini-chromosomes and regeneration of Tomato Plants Modified with Mini-chromosome DNA**

The biolistic delivery method using wet gold particles, described in Example 2, was used to deliver mini-chromosomes to tomato cells. Functional testing of mini-chromosomes using transient assays as described in Example 3. In the transient assay, mini-chromosomes were delivered to tomato cells of a population that is undergoing cell division, in this case tomato suspension cells grown in liquid culture or callus cells grown on plates. PC703, a publicly available tomato callus cell line, was routinely used in transient assays described above. However, any actively



dividing cell type can be used for this assay, such as root tissue, meristem tissue, or callus derived from any plant tissue.

After DNA delivery, the cell population was then monitored for fluorescent protein expression over the course of one to several weeks. Mini-chromosomes containing active centromeres allowed the formation of fluorescent cell clusters, which are derived from a single progenitor cell that has divided and passed the mini-c to its daughter cells. Accordingly, single fluorescent cells and clusters of fluorescent cells of various sizes were scored in the growing cell population after DNA delivery. A number of stable cell lines were obtained following the delivery of the mini-chromosomes listed in Table 29.

**Table 29 Preferred Chromatin tomato BACs, centromeres (CEN), and mini-chromosomes (MC) based upon transient expression assays and generation of stable tomato cell lines.**

BAC Number	CEN Number	MC Number	BAC Class	Stable clones generated
TB4	TB4	TB4R1-2	Hi LE SAT/Tel	yes
TB23	TB23	TB23R1-5	Hi LESAT/Tel	yes
TB80	TB80	TB80R1-2	Hi Hpa/LESAT	yes
TB82	TB82	TB82R1-4	Hi LESAT only	yes
TB99	TB99	TB99R1-5	Hi LESAT only	yes
TB101	TB101	TB101R1-5	Hi LESAT/Hpa/TEL	yes
TB132	TB132	TB132R1-3	Hi LESAT/LE Gata rep	yes

To obtain trans-chromosomal tomato plants, the promising centromeres identified above were combined with a different set of genes than those present in donor vector 151 or 153 which were used in the construction of the initial set of 26 mini-chromosomes. The mini-chromosome construction procedure was thus repeated for BACs TB99 and TB132 using donor vectors 487-489 (See Example 2 and Tables 12-14 for description) and 531 (see Table 30 below for descriptions of the 531 donor vector), following the same steps as described above. Five mini-chromosomes were obtained that contain nptII, summarized below:

**Table 30 Donor Components of pCHR531**

Genetic Element	Size (base pair)	Location (bp)	Details
UBQ10 promoter	359	361-2398	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> polyubiquitin promoter (At4g05320)
DsRed2 + NLS	780	2435-3214	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discozyma sp.</i> (Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
Pyruvate kinase terminator	332	3349-3680	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920)
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	3825-4641	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker
Act2 terminator	800	4823-5622	<i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> Actin 2 terminator
NptII	795	5685-6479	Neomycin phosphotransferase II plant selectable marker
UBQ10 intron	359	6507-6865	PCR amplified <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> intron from UBQ10 gene (At4g05320) for stabilization of NptII gene transcript and increase protein expression levels
Pgd Fly promoter	2140	6873-9012	PCR amplified promoter of phosphogluconate dehydrogenase gene from <i>Drosophila melanogaster</i>
LoxP		312-345 & 9029-9062	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)

Mini-C	Cen name	Cen size	Donor vector	Promoter driving nptII*
TB99R7-1	TB99	50 kb	pCHR487	Tef2
TB99R8-1	TB99	15 kb	pCHR488	GPD-1
TB99R10-1	TB99	48 kb	pCHR531	Pgd-1
TB132R8-1	TB132	48 kb	pCHR488	GPD-1
TB132R10-2	TB132	27 kb	pCHR531	Pgd-1

For tomato modification with these mini-chromosomes (derived from TB99 and TB132 combined with donor vectors 487, 488 and 531), the following procedure was developed. Tomato seeds were surface sterilized in 10% bleach for 15 minutes and washed 4 times with sterile distilled water. The seeds were placed in sterile Petri dishes and dried under sterile air flow in a tissue culture hood. The seeds—were germinated in magenta containers on solid medium (0.5x MS salts, 1x MS vitamins, 10 g/l sucrose, 8 g/l tissue culture agar, 0.5 mM MES, 1.3 g/liter calcium gluconate, pH 5.8) for 8 days at ambient temperature under lights.

Cotyledons and hypocotyls were removed from the seedlings for explants. The cotyledon pieces were cut into slices approximately 3-4 mm wide and the hypocotyls were cut longitudinally. Both types of explants were grown on preculture medium (1x MS salts, 1x MS vitamins, 3% sucrose, 1 mM MES, 8 g/liter tissue culture agar; pH 5.7-5.8) The medium also contained either 1 mg/l BA + 0.1 mg/l non-essential amino acids or 0.75 mg/l zeatin + 1 mg/l IAA. The cotyledon pieces were cultured with the abaxial side in contact with the medium; while the hypocotyls pieces were cultured with the wounded side away from the medium. The explants were pre-cultured for 3-6 days under lights.

The explants were then transferred to 5 cm polyethylene mesh circles and bombarded using the wet biolistics method as described in Example 2. The same surface was bombarded as facing upwards (away from the medium) during pre-culturing. After bombardment, the explants were transferred back onto preculture medium and kept under light.

Two days after bombardment, the explants were transferred onto preculture medium containing 100 mg/liter kanamycin. The explants were cultured on this medium under light for 6 weeks to three months with sub-culturing onto fresh medium every 3 weeks. Starting at 6 weeks after the onset of selection, the explants were screened with a fluorescence stereomicroscope for appearance of fluorescent calli or shoots.

The presence of fluorescent protein expression was detected as described in Example 3. Fluorescent calli or shoots were removed from the explants and transferred to plates with MS3 basal medium (1x MS salts, 1x Gamborg's vitamins, 3% sucrose, 0.5 mM MES, 8 g/liter tissue culture agar, pH 5.8.) + 0.75 mg/l zeatin. The calli were grown on this medium until visible shoots formed. The shoots arising directly from the kanamycin plates were kept on this medium for only 1-2 weeks. The shoots were then transferred to MS3 basal medium + 0.1 mg/liter zeatin and were subcultured on this medium until the shoots elongated (1-3 cm shoot length, at least 5 mm of stem length), with medium changes every 2 weeks.

The elongated shoots were transferred to magenta containers containing 0.5x MS salts, 1x MS vitamins, 1 % sucrose, 0.1 mg/liter IBA, 1 mM

MES, pH 5.7-5.8. Rooting was allowed to proceed until well-formed roots generated (2 weeks to 2 months). Plantlets were then transferred to soil.

Table 31 lists the number of trans-chromosomal events for tomato and tobacco.

<b>Table 31a Tobacco transformants with tomato mini-C's - summary of events</b>	
<b>Construct</b>	<b># events</b>
TB99R7-1	9
TB99R10-1	3
TB132R10-2	2
TB99R8-1	1
TB132R8-1	2
<b>Table 31b Tomato transformants with tomato mini-C's - summary of events</b>	
<b>Construct</b>	<b># events</b>
TB99R7-1	13*
TB132R10-2	10*
*not all events fully regenerated, some of them still in organogenic phase	

#### **Example 9**

##### **Regeneration of Tobacco Plants Modified with Mini-chromosome DNA**

The biolistic delivery method using wet gold particles, described in Example 2, was used to deliver tomato mini-chromosomes (described in Example 7) to Tobacco cells.

An explant from a tobacco leaf was cut using a cork borer. The leaves were immersed in MS medium during cutting to avoid tissue dehydration. The leaf disks were placed adaxial side up onto plates containing callus inducing medium with vitamins (4.44 g/L MS Basal Medium w/Gamborg Vitamins, 0.5 g/L MES, 3% sucrose, 0.5 % tissue culture agar, non-essential amino acids, kinetin and 4 ml of 1000x Gamborg Vitamins, pH 5.8). After four days, the explants were bombarded with wet gold particles/DNA suspension as described in Example 2 using 450 psi rupture disks with the sample tray in the lowest position. For bombardment, explants were transferred onto 50 mm polyethylene mesh circles, and covered with mosquito netting.

Immediately after bombardment, all explants were returned to their original plates for 24 hours. Subsequently, the explants were transferred to MBNV plates (4.44 g/L MS Basal Medium w/Gamborg Vitamins, 0.5 g/L MES, 3% sucrose,

0.5 % tissue culture agar, 0.1 mg/L NAA, 2.0 mg/L BA, 4 ml of 1000x Gamborg Vitamins pH 5.8) containing 50 µg/ml of kanamycin. After 5 days of selection, the explants were transferred to fresh MBNV plates containing 100 µg/ml kanamycin for 10 days. Subsequently, the explants were transferred to MBN plates (MBNV plates described above but without the added vitamins; 1x final concentration of Gamborg's vitamins), containing 100 µg/ml of kanamycin. These plates were subsequently subcultured about every 2 weeks afterwards, onto the same MBN plates containing 100 µg/ml of kanamycin.

The presence of fluorescent protein expression was detected as described in Example 3. A pea-sized fluorescent calli was removed from the plate and transferred to MBN medium without kanamycin. Fluorescent shoots were removed from the callus as they developed, and these shoots were transferred to Magenta containers containing 1x MS salts, 1x MS vitamins and 2% sucrose, pH 5.8. As the shoots enlarged and root formed, they were transferred to Magenta containers containing 0.5x MS salts, 0.5x MS vitamins and 1% sucrose. The transchromosomal events for tobacco plants are described above in Table 31.

**Example 10**  
**Soybean Centromere Discovery and Mini-chromosome**  
**Assembly and Construction**

**BAC library construction**

A Bacterial Artificial Chromosome (BAC) library was constructed from Soybean genomic DNA isolated from *Glycine max* variety "Williams 82" and digested with the restriction enzyme *MboI*. This enzyme was chosen because it is methylation insensitive and therefore can be used to enrich BAC libraries for centromere DNA sequences.

**Probe identification and selection**

Five groups of soybean repetitive genomic or plastid sequences, including specific centromere-localized sequences, were initially compiled as candidate probes for hybridization with the BAC libraries (Table 32). These probes represented various classes of Soybean repetitive sequences including satellite repeats (heterochromatic/ centromere-specific), retroelements, telomeres, rDNA, and hypermethylated DNA fractions.

Seven probes were picked to interrogate the BAC libraries. These probes represent different groups of commonly found repetitive sequences in the Soybean genome. The probes selected are shown in Table 32 and were: two variants of the soybean centromere satellite (TRS and 3X1), 5S ribosomal DNA, plant telomeres, HpaII (bulk methylated DNA purified from genomic DNA by failure to digest with the methylation-sensitive enzyme HpaII) and Sau3A (bulk methylated DNA purified from genomic DNA by failure to digest with the methylation-sensitive enzyme Sau3A), and retroelement. The probes were prepared from cloned fragments isolated or from bulk methylated DNA prepared from Soybean genomic DNA. Sequences from the or PCR primes clones used to prepare each probe are shown in Table 32. The telomere probe sequence (SEQ ID NO: 40) was generated by PCR using the following primers: CHHZ-97 (AGGCGCGCCACCTGCAGGAGAGCTCGGTCTCA TCGAGACAC; SEQ ID NO: 41) and CHHZ-98 (GGTCGACGGCCCGGGCGTT TAAACCCGGGCTCAC; SEQ ID NO: 42). Probes were prepared and labeled with standard molecular biology methods.

Table 32 Soybean Genetic Repetitive Sequences and BAC Library Probes

Group #	Group Name	Probe Name	Description	Clone used for hyb	GenBank accession*
1	Cen repeat	SC2 (SEQ ID NO: 43)	TRS (centromere satellite repeat variant)	5012-5-9-C02	gi 11464861 gb AF297984.1 AF297984 Glycine max clone TRS2 gi 11464862 gb AF297985.1 AF297985 Glycine max clone TRS3 gi 11464860 gb AF297983.1 AF297983 Glycine max clone TRS1 (SEQ ID NO: X)
		SE7 (SEQ ID NO: 44)	3X1(centromere satellite repeat variant)	5012-5-9-E07	Z26334.1 GMP3X1SAT (SEQ ID NO: X)
2	rDNA	SC11 (SEQ ID NO: 45)	5S rDNA	5012-5-9-C11T	X06044.1 GMRN45SI Soybean 4.5 - 5S rRNA intergenic (SEQ ID NO: X)
3	retroelement	SG12 (SEQ ID NO: 46)	retrovirus-like element	5012-5-9-G12T	AF186186 (SEQ ID NO: X)
4	bulk repetitive DNA	SHpaII	Purified methylated DNA fraction	N/A	N/A
		SSau	Purified methylated DNA fraction	N/A	N/A
5	telomere	Stel (SEQ ID NO: 40)	Telomere	PCR product	N/A

\* Accession number of BLAST hit; actual sequence has not been deposited in Genbank

**Library interrogation and data analysis**

The BAC clones from the libraries were spotted onto filters and these filters were hybridized with each of the probes to identify specific BAC clones that contain DNA from the group of sequences represented by the probe(s).

A total of 18,432 BAC clones from the library were interrogated with each of the probes described above using the following hybridization conditions: 0.5 x SSC 0.25% SDS at 65 degrees for 15 minutes, followed by a wash at 65 degrees for a half hour. The hybridization intensities of the BAC clones with each probe were scanned to quantitate hybridization intensity for each clone. The outputs (scores of 1 to 10 based on the hybridization intensities, with 10 being the strongest intensity) were imported into a relational database, for further analysis and classification. The database contained a total of seven tables. Each table contains a total of 18,432 entries: the hybridization scores of each BAC clone from the library to one of the probes used to interrogate the library. Data analysis was done using standard SQL (Structured Query Language) routines to find BACs that contain different groups of repetitive sequences.

**Classification and selection of BAC clones for mini-chromosome construction**

BAC clones containing centromeric/heterochromatic DNA were identified by their hybridization scores to different probes. The goal was to select BAC clones that contained a diverse set of various repetitive sequences. Twelve classes of centromeric BAC clones, some of which overlap, were eventually chosen to cover the broadest possible range of centromeric/heterochromatic sequences for mini-chromosome construction. Detailed descriptions of each class and probe hybridization values for each class are shown in Table 33.

**Table 33 Classification of Soybean BAC clones containing centromeric DNA**

		Probe Hybridization Range							# clones identified
Class	Class Properties	TRS (C2)	3X1 (E7)	5S rDNA (C11)	RE (G12)	Meth (HpaII)	Meth (Sau3A)	TEL	
A	High 3X1	<=4	>=10	N/A	N/A	>=1	N/A	N/A	155
B	High TRS	>=10	<=4	N/A	N/A	>=1	N/A	N/A	114
C	High HpaII	<=10	<=10	N/A	N/A	>=7	N/A	N/A	43



		Probe Hybridization Range							
Class	Class Properties	TRS (C2)	3X1 (E7)	5S rDNA (C11)	RE (G12)	Meth (HpaII)	Meth (Sau3A)	TEL	# clones identified
D	High HpaII only	<=4	<=4	N/A	N/A	>=5	N/A	N/A	44
E	High TRS and HpaII	>=6	N/A	N/A	N/A	>=5	N/A	N/A	34
F	Highest 3X1 and High HpaII	N/A	>=6	N/A	N/A	>=5	N/A	N/A	103
G	High 3X1 and Highest HpaII	N/A	>=6	N/A	N/A	>=5	N/A	N/A	103
H	High TRS and 3X1	>=8	>=8	N/A	N/A	>=1	N/A	N/A	54
I	High TRS, 3X1, HpaII	>=7	>=7	N/A	N/A	>=4	N/A	N/A	5
J	High TRS, 3X1, HpaII	>=6	>=6	N/A	N/A	>=4	N/A	N/A	33
K	High TEL	>=1	>=1	N/A	N/A	>=1	N/A	>=8	6
L	High RE	>=1	>=1	N/A	>=8	>=1	N/A	N/A	105
Total**									642

N/A = not applicable; This is functionally equivalent to >=1, as well as <=10

Classes F and G have the same threshold values but the selected clones for class F show the highest 3X1 scores of all the clones in the class; For class G, the selected clones show the highest HpaII scores for the class., and Classes I and J have the same criteria, but slightly different thresholds.

A number of representative clones from each class were chosen to yield a total of 230 BAC clones for further analysis by restriction digest fingerprinting. The BAC clones were fingerprinted (Table 34) based on restriction sites found in the centromere specific sequence(s) as described in Example 1. The restriction enzymes *HinfI* and *DdeI* were used to digest the BAC clones. After fingerprinting, 33 BACs were selected for further testing using the method described in Example 1.

Thirty-three BAC clones (from the original 230) were selected for mini-chromosome construction and testing based on the fingerprint class which was defined as a simple or complex laddering pattern. Soybean fingerprints were classified into 3 classes: 1. high complexity (multiple large bands with no indication of laddering), 2. low ladder (predominant bands at multiples of the unit repeat size for the centromere satellite, and 3. complex ladder (features of both previous types). Table 34 lists the fingerprint patterns for this selected set of Soybean mini-chromosomes. The preferred BACs have an \*. Table 35 lists the fingerprint classes for 10 selected soybean BACs.

**Table 34: Restriction endonuclease fingerprinting of 33 soybean BACs**

BAC Number	BAC Class	Class Properties	HinfI Fingerprint Class	DdeI Fingerprint Class	MiniC tested
SB1	J	High TRS, 3X1, HpaII	n/d*	4. 6 bands/ 9 bands	SB1R3-1
SB2	D	High HpaII only	4. 6 bands/ 9bands	4. 6 bands/ 9 bands	SB2R5-1
SB3*	H	High TRS and 3X1	3. complex ladder	3. complex ladder	SB3R1-1
SB6*	B	High TRS	2. simple ladder	2. simple ladder	SB6R15-3
SB8	A	High 3X1	1. complex	1. complex	SB8R3-1
SB9*	H	High TRS and 3X1	3. complex ladder	2. simple ladder	SB9R8-1
SB10	L	High RE	1. complex	1. complex	SB10R4-1
SB11*	B	High TRS	3. complex ladder	3. complex ladder	SB11R3-1
					SB11R3-2
					SB11R3-3
SB12*	B	High TRS	3. complex ladder	n/d*	SB12R2-1
					SB12R2-2
					SB12R2-3
SB21	K	High TEL	2. simple ladder	1. complex	SB21R1-2
SB22*	A/L	High 3X1/RE	2. simple ladder	1. complex	SB22R2-1
SB24	A/L	High 3X1/RE	2. simple ladder	1. complex	SB24R2-3
SB29	B	High TRS	n/d*	3. complex ladder	SB29R2-2
SB38*	H	High TRS and 3X1	n/d*	3. complex ladder	SB38R2-1
					SB38R2-2

BAC Number	BAC Class	Class Properties	HinfI Fingerprint Class	DdeI Fingerprint Class	MiniC tested
SB41	H	High TRS and 3X1	n/d*	2. simple ladder	SB41R3-1
SB45	J	High TRS, 3X1, HpaII	4. 6 bands/ 9bands	4. 6 bands/ 9bands	SB45R5-1
SB50*	B	High TRS	3. Complex ladder	n/d*	SB50R1-1
SB62	A	High 3X1	2. Simple ladder	n/d*	SB62R1-2
SB93	B	High TRS	3. complex ladder	n/d*	SB93R3-2
					SB93R3-3
SB97	A	High 3X1	2. simple ladder	n/d*	SB97R3-2
SB102	A	High 3X1	2. simple ladder	n/d*	SB102R3-1
SB107	B	High TRS	2. simple ladder	n/d*	SB107R3-1
SB111	A	High 3X1	2. simple ladder	n/d*	SB111R3-1
SB112	A	High 3X1	3. complex ladder	n/d*	SB112R3-1
SB116*	A	High 3X1	2. simple ladder	n/d*	SB116R3-1
SB118	A	High 3X1	2. simple ladder	n/d*	SB118R3-1
SB119	A	High 3X1	2. simple ladder	n/d*	SB119R3-2
SB123	A	High 3X1	2. simple ladder	n/d*	SB123R3-2
SB125*	B	High TRS	3. complex ladder	n/d*	SB125R3-1
SB135	B	High TRS	2. simple ladder	n/d*	SB135R3-2
SB138	A	High 3X1	2. simple ladder	n/d*	SB138R3-1
SB178	B	High TRS	2. simple ladder	n/d*	SB178R3-1
SB219	B	High TRS	2. simple ladder	n/d*	SB219R3-3

**Table 35: Restriction endonuclease fingerprint classification for 10 selected soybean BACs**

BAC Number	Class	Class Properties	Fingerprint Class	
			HinfI	DdeI
SB3	H	High TRS and 3X1	3. complex ladder	3. complex ladder
SB6	B	High TRS	2. simple ladder	2. simple ladder
SB9	H	High TRS and 3X1	3. complex ladder	2. simple ladder
SB11	B	High TRS	3. complex ladder	3. complex ladder
SB12	B	High TRS	3. complex ladder	n/d*
SB22	A/L	High 3X1/RE	2. simple ladder	1. complex
SB38	H	High TRS and 3X1	n/d*	3. complex ladder
SB50	B	High TRS	3. Complex ladder	n/d*
SB116	A	High 3X1	2. simple ladder	n/d*
SB125	B	High TRS	3. complex ladder	n/d*

*G. Max* (soybean) BAC SB6 was deposited with the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC) on P.O. Box 1549 Manassas, VA 20108, USA on February 23, 2005 and was assigned Accession No. \_\_\_\_\_.

#### **Construction of Mini-chromosome**

Each of the soybean BAC clones identified above were constructed using a Cre-Lox Recombination-Donor as described in Example 2. Soybean mini-chromosomes were constructed from a total of 33 BACs using donor vector pCHR151 in this assembly process, and were subsequently tested in several different soybean cell lines. Mini-chromosome genetic elements within the pCHR151 are described above in Table 10. The Soybean mini-chromosomes were used to transform broccoli plants (see Table 37 below).

#### **Identification of functional soybean centromeres**

Functional testing of mini-chromosomes using transient assays as described may be carried out as in Example 3. Mini-chromosomes are delivered to the soybean cells using wet biolistic as described in Example 2. After DNA delivery, the cell population is then monitored for fluorescent protein expression over the course of one to several weeks. Mini-chromosomes containing active centromeres

will allow the formation of fluorescent cell clusters, which are derived from a single progenitor cell that has divided and inherited the mini-chromosome to its daughter cells. Accordingly, single fluorescent cells and clusters of fluorescent cells of various sizes are scored in the growing cell population after DNA delivery. Standard protocols for soybean tissue culture and transformation, including those available at the University of Iowa, School of Agriculture web site, are used to regenerate adchromosomal soybean plants.

#### **Mini-chromosome Autonomy.**

As a direct demonstration of mini-chromosome autonomy, circular constructs were recovered from fluorescent soybean cell lines that had been propagated for 5 months (~25 generations) following bombardment. Genomic DNA was extracted from a cell line containing SB12MC, and the DNA was treated with a highly processive exonuclease, resulting in degradation of all linear DNA fragments including those derived from host chromosomes. Surviving DNA molecules were introduced into *E. coli* and transformants were selected on antibiotic-containing medium.

Genomic DNA from unmodified soybean cells did not result in any antibiotic-resistant colonies, while DNA purified from the line containing mini-chromosomes yielded 13 independent modified colonies (2 from exonuclease-treated DNA and 11 from untreated DNA, R1-R13). DNA was extracted from each transformed *E. coli* clone and characterized by gel electrophoresis and sequencing. While the vector backbone of the rescued mini-chromosomes was typically unchanged (9/13 transformants). BAC-end sequencing demonstrated that 11/13 of the recovered clones retained the same DNA sequence junctions at the centromere cloning boundaries as the parental molecule (600/600 bp sequenced at each junction), including two of the mini-chromosomes with altered vector sequences.

Fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH) was carried out to examine mini-chromosome autonomy and copy number. Cells containing mini-chromosomes were arrested in metaphase, spread on slides and probed with labeled soybean centromere satellite DNA (red) and mini-chromosome vector sequences. In cells hybridizing to both the centromere and vector probes, only one autonomous mini-chromosome was identified; similar signals were not detected in non-transgenic controls. Only a subset of the native centromeres were labeled, suggesting that the

satellite sequence used as a probe is chromosome-specific. Strong vector hybridization signals were not detected within the host chromosomes, providing further evidence that the mini-chromosome DNA remained autonomous.

#### Satellite sequences from mini-chromosomes

The identified soybean mini-chromosomes defined DNA sequences sufficient for centromere activity. The sequence content of the centromere-containing BAC clones and the mini-chromosomes derived from them with quantitative dot blots, using probes that correspond to i) vector sequences, ii) soybean satellites, iii) the SIRE retroelement, and iv) 28S rDNA, all of which are highly repetitive sequences present in the soybean centromeric region. BAC SB1 lacked centromere activity and has a high rDNA content with undetectable satellite and retroelement sequences. By contrast, the mini-chromosome derivatives of SB6 and SB12 had similar compositions, with 6.4 and 11.8 kb of centromere satellite, respectively. The recovered SB12 derivatives retained the parental composition (R4, R6, R7, R10), had a two-fold decrease in satellite (R1, R2, R3, R5), or had little or no satellite (R8, R9, R11, R12, R13). The SIRE retroelements present in SB12 were retained in most of the derivatives, suggesting little selective pressure to eliminate this sequence during growth of the modified cell culture. In addition, each mini-chromosome also contained ~8.5 kb of gene sequence from pCHR151 (Table 10).

DNA sequencing of SB12R2-3 (1.4-fold insert coverage) revealed ~80% of the insert was composed of tandem satellite repeats (Genbank U11026 and Z26334), ~9.9% was made up of retroelement-related sequences, and ~10.1% represented novel, contiguous sequence. The same analysis also produced 1.6-fold vector sequence coverage, indicating little if any cloning bias against fragments from the centromere. Individual satellite repeats showed an average of 91.3% (s.d.=11.3%) identity to each other, with specific regions showing significantly higher and lower levels of variability. Comparing the satellite repeat consensus from SB12R2-3 to that obtained from random satellite sequences (CrGm1 and CrGm2) identified several bases that differed significantly ( $\chi^2$  test,  $P < 0.05$ ). The SB12R2-3 satellite repeats showed an average length of  $91.07 \pm 0.40$  bp, similar to the CrGm2 91-base consensus and differing from the CrGm1 92-base consensus. Figure 6 shows an alignment of these consensus sequences.

### Example 11

#### Analysis of Mini-chromosomal DNA Expression in Transgenic Plants

#### Visual Scoring

The adchromosomal plants described above in Example 4 (broccoli), Example 5 (canola), Example 6 (tobacco) and Example 7 (tomato) were tested to determine if the mini-chromosome DNA was being expressed. The presence of visible marker genes allowed for visual analysis to determine if the regenerated plants were expressing the fluorescent protein present on the mini-chromosome. For visual analysis, a piece of a leaf or other plant part was cut from the adchromosomal plant. A similar part is cut from a control plant (non-adchromosomal). The plants were analyzed under a fluorescence stereo-microscope as described in Example 3.

Table 37 displays the results of visual scoring of T0 adchromosomal plants.

**Table 37**

Host	No. of Centromeres Tested and Origin of Centromere	No. of Positives	Scored In
Broccoli	15 (13 broccoli, 1 soybean and 1 tobacco)	12 (10 broccoli, 1 soybean and 1 tobacco)	plants
Broccoli	15 (13 broccoli, 1 soybean and 1 tobacco)	14 (12 broccoli, 1 soybean and 1 tobacco)	cluster formation
Canola	1 (broccoli)	1	plant
Canola	34 (broccoli)	10	cell culture
Tobacco	2 (tomato)	2	plants
Tomato	8 (tomato)	2	plants
Tomato	20 (tomato)	2	cell culture

Expression of the fluorescent protein gene encoded by the mini-chromosome was readily observed in the cells of a piece of tissue such as leaf or root taken from a transchromosomal plant under a fluorescence stereo-microscope. Fluorescence was very high and uniform throughout the tissue. Sectoring of fluorescence protein expression was observed in some cases.

#### PCR Analysis

PCR was used to amplify sequences within the mini-chromosome. This method allowed for detection of all mini-chromosome parts or a subset of parts. PCR analysis was also carried out in DNA samples isolated from whole cell DNA preparations from adchromosomal broccoli, canola and tobacco plants. A piece of leaf was cut from the plant and ground by hand using a pestle and a microcentrifuge

tube. The DNA was isolated using Qiagen Kit (catalog no. 69106) according to the manufacturer's instructions. PCR reactions were carried out as follows: 3 µl template DNA, 2.5 µl of 10x Termopol buffer (New England Bioscience, Catalog No. B9004S), 0.5 µl dNTP's (10 mM each), 1.5 µl oligo 1 (20 µM), 1.5 µl oligo 2 (20 µM), 15.5 µl dH<sub>2</sub>O and 0.5 µl Taq polymerase (New England Bioscience, Catalog No. M0267S). The Oligos used either detected the DsRed gene (CHHZ 150 and 152) or the UBQ10 promoter (CHHZ 467 and 469). To detect DsRed oligo CHHZ 150 (TGAACGGCCACGAGTTCGAGATCG; SEQ ID NO: 47) and oligo CHHZ 150 (GTCCTCGTTGTGGGAGGTGATGTC; SEQ ID NO: 48) were used. To detect the UBQ10 promoter oligo CHHZ467 (CTGCCACTCCATTTCCTTCTCGGC; SEQ ID NO: 49) and oligo CHH469 (ACTTATCCGGTCCTAGATCATCAG; SEQ ID NO: 50) were used. The results of the PCR analysis are displayed in Table 38.

**Table 38**

Host	No. of Events	No. of Plants Tested	No. of PCR Positives	No. of Visual Positives
Broccoli	74	140	127	128
Canola	6	55	35	32
Tobacco	24	61	16	20

### **Western Blot**

Expression of the fluorescent protein DsRed in the adchromosomal broccoli plants was measured by Western blot analysis. Leaf tissue, obtained using a cork borer, was ground to a fine powder using a chilled pestle and the leaf tissue was lysed using Novex Tris-Glycine SDS Sample Buffer (2x) on ice. The protein sample concentration was determined using the BAC assay and the samples were separated on a tris-glycine gel (4-20%) according to the manufacturer's instructions (Novex). A protein sample from a non-adchromosomal broccoli plant was run as a negative control. Boiled purified *E.coli* purified DsRed was run as a positive control. The protein was transferred from the gel to filter paper (nitrocellulose or PVDF). The filter was immunoblotted with an anti-DsRed primary antibody (Clontech), which was detected with an HRP-labeled secondary antibody and developed with Pierce Supersignal West Pico Chemiluminescent Substrate. Table 39 summarizes the Western Blot analysis.



**Table 39**

	Broccoli Centromeres in Broccoli		Soy Centromeres in Broccoli	
	No. tested	No. positive	No. tested	No. positive
Centromere	9	9	1	1
Mini-chromosomes	28	28	1	1
Events	51	47	3	3
Plants	136	119	4	4

**RT-PCR**

Expression of the DsRed mRNA in the adchromosomal broccoli plants was also analyzed by RT-PCR. Total RNA was isolated from plant tissue using the Qiagen mini-kit (catalog no. 74104) according to the manufacturer's instructions. The reverse transcriptase reaction was carried out with 11  $\mu$ l DNAase I-treated total RNA, 1  $\mu$ l oligo-DT (oligo CHR152 specific for DsRed), 1  $\mu$ l dNTP (10 mM each). The reaction was heated to 62°C for 2 minutes and chill on ice, then the following was added: 4  $\mu$ l 5x 1<sup>st</sup> stand buffer (Invitrogen), 2  $\mu$ l DTT (Invitrogen) and 1  $\mu$ l Superscript II reverse transcriptase. The mixture was incubated at 42°C for 1 hour. Subsequently, 80  $\mu$ l of dH<sub>2</sub>O was added and the mixture was heat inactivated for 15 minutes at 70°C.

The cDNA samples generated by the reverse transcriptase reaction were amplified with a PCR reaction carried out with 5  $\mu$ l cDNA, 2.5  $\mu$ l 10x Themopol buffer (New England Bioscience), 0.5  $\mu$ l dNTPs (10 mM each), 1.5  $\mu$ M oligo 1 (20  $\mu$ M each), 1.5  $\mu$ l oligo 2 (20 mM each) 13.5  $\mu$ l H<sub>2</sub>O and 0.5  $\mu$ l Taq polymerase (New England Bioscience). 83 adchromosomal broccoli plants were tested and 69 were positive for DsRed mRNA expression (73 were positive by visual analysis).

Table 40 is a summary of the visual, PCR, Western, and RT-PCR data for the adchromosomal broccoli plants.

**Table 40**

Event	PCR	RT	Western	Visual	Construct	Centromere	# Genes	# Plants
4	+	+	+	+	5R4-1	BB5	2	8
6	+	+	+	+	5R4-1	BB51	2	5
7	+	+	+	+	5R4-1	BB5	2	22
10	+	+	+	+	5R4-1	BB5	2	16
15	+	+	+	+	5R4-1	BB5	2	10
17	+	+	+	+	5R4-1	BB5	2	17

Event	PCR	RT	Western	Visual	Construct	Centromere	# Genes	# Plants
18	+	+	+	+	71R1-1	BB71	2	4
23	+	+	+	+	489	integrative	2	1
35	+	+	+	+	816-2	BB5	4	4
39	-	-	-	-	817-A	BB5	4	13
40	+	+	+	+	817-A	BB5	4	3
51	+	+	+	+	817-A	BB5	4	7
52	+	+	+	+	819-A	BB5	4	4
53	+	+	+	+	819-A	BB5	4	3
55	+	+	+	+	819-A	BB5	4	6
67	+	+	+	+	824-9	BB5	4	2
69	+	+	+	+	824-9	BB5	4	5
83	-	-	-	-	591-1L	BB5	3	5
112	+	-	-	-	593-4L	BB5	3	5
119	+	+	+	+	593-4L	BB5	3	4

### Example 12

#### Analysis of Autonomy and Integration of Mini-chromosomes in Adchromosomal Broccoli Plants

##### Southern Blot

Southern blot analysis was carried out to analyze whether the mini-chromosome was autonomous or integrated into the genome of the of the adchromosomal T0 broccoli plants. An autonomous mini-chromosome will have the same restriction pattern as wild type plant DNA spiked with mini-chromosome DNA, while a mini-chromosome that has integrated into a host chromosome will have an altered restriction pattern and that altered restriction pattern is not predictable. If integration does occur and the junction between the host chromosome DN is in the centromeric region of the mini-chromosome, a restriction pattern similar to an autonomous mini-chromosome is expected. This is true because only the "gene region" (the part of the mini-chromosome excluding the centromere region) is subsequently used as a probe, as described below.

Plant tissue from the adchromosomal and control broccoli plants was ground to a fine powder in liquid nitrogen using mortar and pestle. Genomic DNA was isolated from the homogenized plant cells using phenol:chloroform:isoamyl alcohol extraction as taught by Csail *et al.*, (Plant Mol. Biol. Rep. 16: 69-89, 1998). The DNA samples (5 µg) were digested with BglII restriction enzyme diluted in enzyme buffer, 100x BSA, 100mM β-mercaptoethanol, 100 mM spermidine, dH<sub>2</sub>O. The DNA was digested overnight at 37°C. Subsequently, an additional 2 µl of BglII was added to the DNA and allowed to digest a few additional hours. Loading buffer

was added and the samples were separated on a 0.7% agarose gel. The DNA on the gel was visualized using ethidium bromide. The DNA on the gel was transferred to a nylon membrane using a Bio-Rad Vacuum Blotter (Model 785). The filters were probed with radiolabeled DNA complementary to the gene region of the mini-chromosome (entire sequence excluding the centromere region).

Southern blot analysis was carried out on 60 adchromosomal broccoli plants in which 32 events were tested, 7 centromeres were tested (6 broccoli centromeres and 1 soybean centromere). 40% of the samples were tested in duplicate. The Southern Blot results are summarized in Table 41. In the majority of events, the gene region of the mini-chromosome was intact and the results indicate the mini-chromosomes were autonomous or integrated via the centromere sequence. BB5R4-1

Table 41

Mini-chromosome	Centromere	No. of Events Tested	Consistent with		Not Detected
			Autonomy	Integration	
5R4-1	BB5	6	1	5	-
5R16-6	BB5	1	1	-	-
817	BB5R4-1	2	1	-	1
818	BB5R4-1	1	1	-	-
819	BB5R4-1	4	4	-	-
820	BB5R4-1	1	-	-	1
823	BB5R4-1	3	3	-	-
824	BB5R4-1	2	1	-	1
591-1	BB5R4-1	2	1	-	1
593-3L	BB5R4-1	1	1	-	-
593-4L	BB5R4-1	1	-	1	-
816-2	BB5R4-1	2	2	-	-
965	BB15R4-1	1	1	-	-
964-4	BB15R4-1	1	-	-	1
967	BB16R1-2	1	1	-	-
222R2-1	BB222	1	-	-	1
972-5	BB60R1-1	1	1	-	-
SB986-1	SB38R2-2	1	1	-	-
Total		32	20	6	6

#### Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization

Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) is carried out to determine the autonomy of the mini-chromosomes in root tips and anthers from the adchromosomal T0 broccoli plants. The tissues were probed with labeled pCHR151 and pCHR08, and BB5 PCRRed BSAT and stained with DAPI. For analysis, the FISH

chromosomal spreads needed to meet the following criteria: condensed and well-spread chromosomes, free of major background, strong centromere hybridization, 18 chromosomes, signal localized to approximately the same place on same chromosome. Integration is determined by detecting the mini-chromosome and it is associated with the genome and autonomy is determined by detecting the mini-chromosome and it was free of the genome. If the mini-chromosome is detected to be both free and associated with the genome it is both autonomous and integrated mini-chromosomes are present.

### Example 13

#### Analysis of Mini-chromosomes in T1 *Brassica* Pollen and T1 *Brassica* Plants

To analyze the presence of the mini-chromosome in pollen isolated from a flowering adchromosomal T0 *Brassica* plant (T1 pollen), two anthers from each of three flowers were removed. The anthers were harvested from flowers that were open for more than a half a day and were shedding pollen. The anthers were streaked on a plate of sterile medium containing 1x MS salts, 13% sucrose, 0.8% tissue culture agar, pH 5.8, depositing a streak of pollen onto the surface of the plate. In a darkened room, the pollen was examined with a fluorescence stereo-microscope using 100x magnification and a rhodamine or FITC filter set. At least 500 pollen cells in groups of 100 were counted. Total pollen cells were counted under visible light and then examined under fluorescence.

T1 pollen was analyzed from adchromosomal T0 broccoli plants. The broccoli pollen visual data is summarized in Table 42.

**Table 42**

Plant	Event	% of Pollen Grains Expressing DsRed
Pbo4A	4	0%
pbo4E2	4	no pollen
pbo7BCopy	7	0%
pbo7C	7	no pollen
pbo7C1Copy	7	no pollen
pbo7S	7	0%
pbo10C2	10	no pollen
pbo10C2Copy	10	no pollen
pbo10D3	10	no pollen
pbo15E1	15	0%
pbo15E2	15	7%
pbo15M1	15	1%

Plant	Event	% of Pollen Grains Expressing DsRed
pbo15O	15	0%
pbo17A1	17	0%
pbo17C2	17	0%
pbo17G1	17	0%
pbo17N1	17	0%
pbo18A	18	1%
pbo18B	18	0%
pbo19G3	19	4%
pbo28A	28	0%
pbo39B1	39	0%
pbo39C	39	0%
pbo40A	40	32%
pbo40D	40	25%
pbo51C	51	4%
pbo51D	51	0%
pbo52A	52	0%
pbo52C	52	1%
pbo53A	53	8%
pbo55B	55	4%
pbo69A1	69	0%
pbo83A1	83	0%
pbo112A3	112	no pollen
pbo119A	119	no pollen
pbo126A	126	0%
pbo126B	126	3%
pbo173D	173	no pollen
pbo221A	221	14%
pbo222E	222	2%

Adchromosomal T1 broccoli plants were generated by selfing or outcrossing. All crosses were done by bud pollination to overcome self-incompatibility and/or to ensure that the donor pollen gave rise to all seeds in the pod. To perform a bud pollination, an unopened flower was stripped of all sepals, petals and stamens, leaving only the immature pistil. Pollen from the appropriate plant was applied to the stigma. The flower was labeled and the pod allowed to develop normally. The presence of the mini-chromosome in the adchromosomal T1 broccoli plants were analyzed visually and by PCR as described in Example 8. Three mini-chromosomes comprising one of two centromere sequences (with 2 and 4 genes) were analyzed. The data from the adchromosomal T1 broccoli plants is summarized in Table 43 and Table 44.

**Table 43 T1 Adchrosomal Broccoli Plants**

Event	Visual scoring of T1 seedlings (outcross - male)		Visual scoring of T1 seedlings (outcross - female)		Visual Scoring of T1 seedlings (self)		PCR on negative seedlings	
	tested	positive	tested	positive	tested	positive	tested	positive
4	68	0	55	0	-	-	57	0
17	158	0	-	-	1	0	95	0
17	70	0	-	-	1	0	-	-
17	39	0	67	0	17	1	-	-
17	9	0	4	0	-	-	13	1
18	11	0	52	5	-	-	-	-
18	34	0	-	-	-	-	-	-
40	46	0	4	3	9	7	3	0

**Table 44 T1 Adchrosomal Broccoli Plants**

		Visual						PCR of Negatives	
		Donor		Recipient		Self		Tested	Positive
Plant	Event	Tested	Positive	Tested	Positive	Tested	Positive		
pbo4A	4	69	0	55	0	0	0	57	0
pbo17A1	17	258	0	51	0	9	0	98	0
pbo17A3	17	77	0	1	0	1	0	0	0
pbo17C2	17	43	0	65	0	20	0	0	0
pbo17G1	17	0	0	4	1	0	0	0	0
pbo17N1	17	9	0	4	0	10	0	13	0
pbo18A	18	248	0	52	0	6	0	0	0
pbo18B	18	50	0	29	0	0	0	0	0
pbo22	22	66	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
pbo40A	40	56	28	3	1	9	7	59	27
pbo40D	40	65	32	22	13	40	31	0	0
pbo51A	51	64	0	0	0	12	0	0	0
pbo51C	51	101	0	63	2	0	0	0	0
pbo51D	51	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0
pbo52C	52	83	0	236	6	59	0	0	0

Pollen was also analyzed from transformed T0 canola plants (*Brassica napus*) by visual analysis. The visual data is summarized in Table 45.

**Table 45 *Brassica napus* pollen fluorescence summary**

Plant	Event #	Mini-C	# pollen counted	% fluorescent pollen	Flower size
11-1-2	11	pCHR820-1	568	87.5%	large
11-1-4	11	pCHR820-1	558	88.9%	large
11-2	11	pCHR820-1	637	68.8%	N.R.
11-3-1-1	11	pCHR820-1	613	52.7%	small
11-3-1-2	11	pCHR820-1	667	63.7%	small
11-6-1	11	pCHR820-1	591	98.0%	large

Plant	Event #	Mini-C	# pollen counted	% fluorescent pollen	Flower size
11-6-2	11	pCHR820-1	580	96.6%	large
11-6-3	11	pCHR820-1	640	93.8%	large
11-6-4	11	pCHR820-1	585	95.2%	large
11-7	11	pCHR820-1	607	67.2%	small
11-8-1-1	11	pCHR820-1	540	65.4%	N.R.
11-8-1-2	11	pCHR820-1	584	62.5%	small
11-8-1-3	11	pCHR820-1	512	64.8%	N.R.
11-8-2	11	pCHR820-1	542	66.4%	N.R.
11-8-2-2	11	pCHR820-1	652	69.8%	small
11-8-2-3	11	pCHR820-1	574	66.7%	small
11-8-2-4	11	pCHR820-1	610	63.1%	small
11-12	11	pCHR820-1	550	94.2%	N.R.
11-14-1-1	11	pCHR820-1	600	97.3%	large
11-14-2	11	pCHR820-1	569	97.7%	large
11-15	11	pCHR820-1	565	86.7%	large
11-17	11	pCHR820-1	605	98.0%	large
16-2-2	16	pCHR820-1	>2000	0.0%	large/abnormal
16-2-3	16	pCHR820-1	655	61.1%	large/abnormal
16-2-3	16	pCHR820-1	589	48.9%	large/abnormal
19-2	19	pCHR820-1	573	40.1%	large
19-3-1	19	pCHR820-1	704	49.7%	large
19-5-1	19	pCHR820-1	666	49.7%	Large
N.R. = not recorded					

Pollen was also analyzed from adchromosomal T0 tobacco plants by visual analysis. The visual pollen data is summarized in Tables 46. In addition, adchromosomal T1 tobacco plants were analyzed visually and by PCR. The T1 plant data is summarized in Tables 47 and 48. T1 tomato pollen, harvested from adchromosomal T0 tomato plants was also visually analyzed. 537 pollen cells were counted and 153 were fluorescent (28.5%)

**Table 46 Visual Analysis of Adchrosomal T0 Tobacco Plants**

Plant	Construct type	Construct	Fluorescent pollen	Total pollen	%
XNN	-	-	0	2000	0
pNt1E	mini-C	TB99R7-1	79	511	15.5
pNt2A-3	mini-C	TB99R10-1	289	531	54.4
pNt2D-1	mini-C	TB99R10-1	323	538	60.0
pNt2H-2	mini-C	TB99R10-1	251	520	48.0
pNt2E	mini-C	TB99R10-1	268	507	53.0
pNt2D	mini-C	TB99R10-1	195	508	38.0
pNt2H	mini-C	TB99R10-1	76	507	15.0
pNt4D-1	mini-C	TB99R10-1	200	502	39.8
pNt6A	mini-C	pCHR488+ TB99R1-5	18	120	15.0
pNt8B	integrating	pCHR488+479	63	650	9.7
pNt13D	integrating	pCHR488+480	188	519	36.2
pNt15B	mini-C	TB99R8-1	249	500	49.8
pNt15D	mini-C	TB99R8-1	272	506	54.0
pNt16B	mini-C	TB132R8-1	202	501	40.0
pNt16D	mini-C	TB132R8-1	277	506	55.0

**Table 47 Visual Analysis of Adchrosomal T0 Tobacco Plants**

Event	T0 Plant Visual Score	Visual Scoring of T1 seedlings (self)			PCR scoring of red (+) T1 seedlings (selfed)		PCR scoring of non-Red (-) T1 seedlings (self)	
		counted	Red	% Red	tested	positive	tested	positive
1	+	192	174	90%	10	6	16	0
1	+	91	79	87%				
2	-	294	0	0%				
2	-	393	1	0%				
2	+	208	163	78%	10	10	25	0
2	+	177	126	71%				
2	+	200	145	73%				

**Table 48 Visual Analysis of T1 Tobacco Seedlings**

Plant	Fluorescent Seedlings	Seedlings Counted	% Fluorescent
pNT 14B	0	165	0%
pNT 15B	36	61	62.30%
pNT 15D	137	210	62.00%
pNT 1B(1)	79	91	86.80%
pNT 1G(2)	174	192	90%
pNT 2A-1	163	208	78%
pNT 2A-2	65	89	73.00%



Plant	Fluorescent Seedlings	Seedlings Counted	% Fluorescent
pNT 2A-3(2)	145	200	72.5%
pNT 2B-1	0	73	0%
pNT 2C(2)	1	393	0.25%
pNT 2C-1	0	294	0%
pNT 2C-2(1)	0	204	0%
pNT 2D(1)	126	177	71.1%
pNT 2D(3)			
pNT 2E(1)	185	238	77.7%
pNT 2F(1)	0	228	0%
pNT 2F(2)			
pNT 2G(1)	14	19	73.7%
pNT 2G(2)	16	24	66.7%
pNT 2I(1)	0	230	0%
pNT 2K(2)	156	226	69.00%
pNT 2D(2)			
pNT 5A	0	128	0
pNT 15A	0	78	0
pNT 19A	0	217	0

#### Example 14 Corn Centromere Discovery

##### BAC library construction

Two Bacterial Artificial Chromosome (BAC) libraries were constructed from corn genomic DNA. The corn genomic DNA was isolated from corn variety B73 and digested with the restriction enzymes *Bst*YI or *Mbo*I. These enzymes were chosen because they are methylation insensitive and therefore can be used to enrich BAC libraries for centromere DNA sequences.

##### Probe identification and selection

Twenty-three groups of corn repetitive genomic or plastid sequences, including specific centromere-localized sequences, were initially compiled as candidate probes for hybridization with the BAC libraries (Table 49). These probes represented various classes of corn repetitive sequences including satellite repeats (heterochromatic / centromere-specific), retroelements, rDNA, B chromosome-specific repeats, chloroplast and mitochondrion DNA, hypermethylated or hypomethylated DNA fractions, and telomeric DNA.



17	pZmBs and K5	<u>S67586</u>	B-specific repeats; B73 has no B chromosomes	Alfenito and Birchler 1993; Kaszas and Birchler 1993, 1998		<u>AY173950</u>
18	rDNA	CRJM-023 and 024	maize intergenic spacer			<u>AF013103</u>
		CRJM-025 and 026	maize 5S			<u>AF273104</u>
		CRJM-027 and 028	maize 17S			<u>K0220</u>
19	chloroplast	CHHZ211 and 212	Arabidiosis			
		CRJM-030 and 031	maize xpl rDNAs			<u>X01365</u>
20	mito	CHHZ214 and 215	Arabidiosis			
		CRJM-032 and 033	maize mito 26S rDNA			<u>K01868</u>
21	hypermethylated fraction	purified				complex mixture
22	hypomethylated fraction	purified				complex mixture
23	telomere		sub-telomeric repeat		U39641	U39642

Twelve probes were picked to interrogate the BAC libraries. These probes represent different groups of commonly found repetitive sequences in the corn genome. The twelve probes selected are shown in Table 49 and 50 and were: Cent-C (#15), Cent4 (#16), MZEHETRO (#13), TR-1 (#14), CentA (#2), CR (#1), Huck (#3), Grande (#4), 17S rDNA (#18), 5S rDNA (#18); B cen (#17), and xplmito (#19 and #20). The primers used to amplify these probes are identified in Table 49. Probes were prepared and labeled with standard molecular methods.

Table 50

Class	Class Properties	Cent-C	CentA	CR	Huck	Grande	17S rDNA	Cent4	TR-1	MZE HETRO	5S rDNA	B cen	xplmito	# clones identified
I	HiC LoA	>= 7	< 7	< 7	< 7	< 6	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	61
II	HiC HiA	>= 7	>= 6	< 7	<= 10	<= 10	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	61
III	HiCR HiC	>= 7	< 6	>= 6	<= 10	<= 10	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	30
IV	HiA HiC	>= 7	> 6	>= 6	<= 10	<= 10	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	30
	HiCR													
V	HiC Hi17s	>= 7	> 0	> 0	> 0	> 0	> 5	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	30
VI	Hi4	> 0	> 0	> 0	> 0	N/A	N/A	> 5	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	17
VII	HiTr1	> 0	> 0	N/A	N/A	N/A	> 0	N/A	> 6	< 6	N/A	N/A	N/A	31
	LoHet													
VIII	LoTr1	> 0	> 0	N/A	N/A	N/A	> 0	N/A	< 5	> 7	N/A	N/A	N/A	31
	HiHet													
IX	HiTr1	> 0	> 0	N/A	N/A	N/A	> 0	N/A	> 6	> 6	N/A	N/A	N/A	24
	HiHet													
Total														315

\* Values represent hybridization intensities of an individual BAC to each probe on a scale of 1 to 10. Values were normalized.

### **Library interrogation and data analysis**

The BAC clones from the libraries were spotted onto filters for further analysis. The filters were hybridized with each of the 12 probes to identify specific BAC clones that contain DNA from the group of sequences represented by the probe(s).

A total of 92,160 BAC clones from the two libraries (36,864 BAC clones from 2 filters from the *Bst*YI library and 55,296 clones from 3 filters from the *Mbo*I library) were interrogated with each of the 12 probes described above using the following hybridization conditions: 0.5 x SSC 0.25% SDS at 65 degrees for 15 minutes, followed by a wash at 65 degrees for a half hour. The hybridization intensities of the BAC clones with each probe were scanned to quantitate hybridization intensity for each clone. Scores of 1 to 10 (based on the hybridization intensities, with 10 being the strongest hybridization) were imported into a relational database, for classification. The database contained a total of 24 tables, 12 from each library used in the interrogation. Each table contained the hybridization scores of each BAC clone from the *Bst*YI or *Mbo*I library, to one of the 12 probes. Data analysis was carried out using standard SQL (Structured Query Language) routines to find BACs that contain different groups of repetitive sequences.

### **Classification and selection of BAC clones for mini-chromosome construction**

BAC clones containing centromeric/heterochromatic DNA were identified by their hybridization scores to different probes. The goal was to select BAC clones that contained a diverse set of various repetitive sequences. Nine classes of centromeric BAC clones were eventually chosen to cover the broadest possible range of centromeric/heterochromatic sequences for mini-chromosome construction. Detailed descriptions of each class and probe hybridization values for each class are shown in Table 50.

Class I (HiC LoA) BAC clones had strong hybridization to probe Cent-C, but low hybridization to Cent-A, CR, Huck and Grande. Class II (HiC HiA) BAC clones had strong hybridization to both Cent-C and CentA, but low hybridization to CR. Class III (HiCR HiC) BAC clones had strong hybridization to both Cent-C and CR, but low hybridization to CentA. Class IV (HiA HiC HiCR) BAC clones had strong hybridization to Cent-C, CentA, and CR. Class V (HiC Hi17s) BAC clones had strong hybridization to Cent-C and 17S rDNA. Class VI (Hi4) BAC clones had

strong hybridization to Cent4. Class VII (HiTr1 LoHet) BAC clones had strong hybridization to TR-1 but low hybridization to MZEHETRO. Class VIII (LoTr1 HiHet) BAC clones had strong hybridization to MZEHETRO but low hybridization to TR-1. Class IX (HiTr1 HiHet) BAC clones had strong hybridization to both TR-1 and MZEHETRO.

A number of representative clones from each class were chosen to yield a total of 315 BAC clones for further analysis by restriction digest fingerprinting.

The 315 BAC clones were fingerprinted based on restriction sites found in the centromere specific sequence(s). Fingerprinting was used to evaluate the sequence composition of the large numbers of BAC clones and to compare their similarity to each other by comparing the restriction enzyme digest fragment patterns. A sequence with a tandem repeated sequence will show a single intense band of unit repeat size when digested with a restriction enzyme that cuts within the unit repeat. Second, BAC clones with similar sequences will show similar patterns of restriction fragments in a digest.

BAC DNA was extracted from bacteria using methods familiar to those in the art. Restriction enzymes *HpaII* and *MspI* were used to digest BAC clones in Classes I through VI, and restriction enzyme *NdeI* was used to digest BAC clones in classes VII through IX.

*Z. mays* (corn) BACs ZB19 and ZB113 were deposited with the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC) P.O. Box 1549 Manassas, VA 20108, USA on February 23, 2005 and assigned Accession NO. \_\_\_\_\_.

#### **Example 15**

##### **Construction of Maize Mini-chromosomes**

The 115 BAC clones identified in Example 1 were grown up and DNA was extracted for mini-chromosome construction using NucleoBond™ Purification Kit (Clontech). To determine the molecular weight of centromere fragments in the BAC libraries, a frozen sample of bacteria harboring a BAC clone was grown in selective liquid media and the BAC DNA harvested using a standard alkaline lysis method. The recovered BAC DNA was restriction digested and resolved on an agarose gel. Centromere fragment size was determined by comparing to a molecular weight standard.

For each BAC, two types of mini-chromosomes were generated, differing only by the promoter used to express the DsRed gene. Corn ADH promoter was used to express DsRed in mini-chromosomes constructed with pCHR667 and the Arabidopsis UBQ10 promoter was used to express DsRed in mini-chromosomes constructed with pCHR758. Mini-chromosome genetic elements within the pCHR667 and pCHR758 vectors are set out in Table 51 and 52, respectively.

**Table 51 Donor Components of pCHR667**

Genetic Element	Size (base pair)	Location (bp)	Details
ADH Corn Promoter	1189	14-1202	PCR amplified maize promoter alcohol dehydrogenase 1 (ADH-1) for expression of DsRed in maize (used primers CRJM-42/43)
Maize ADH Intron	579	1216-1794	PCR amplified maize ADH intron with AUG mutation for stabilization of DsRed2 gene transcript and increase protein expression level (used primers CRJM-72/73)
DsRed2 + NLS	780	1817-2596	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discozyma sp.</i> (Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
ADH Terminator	203	2725-2927	Amplified maize terminator using primers CRJM-46/47
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	3066-3882	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker
Rps16A terminator	489	4065-4553	Amplified from <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> 40S ribosomal protein S16 (At2g09990) for termination of NptII gene
NPTII	795	4617-5411	Neomycin phosphotransferase II plant selectable marker
UBQ10 intron	359	5439-5798	PCR amplified <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> intron from UBQ10 gene (At4g05320) for stabilization of NptII gene transcript and increase protein expression level
YAT1 yeast promoter	2000	5812-7811	PCR amplified YAT1 promoter from chromosome I of <i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i> for expression of NptII in maize
LoxP	34	10341-10374 and 7829-7862	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)

**Table 52 Donor Components of pCHR758**

Genetic Element	Size (base pair)	Location (bp)	Details
UBQ10 promoter	2038	14-2051	Arabidopsis thaliana polyubiquitin promoter (At4g05320)
DsRed2 + NLS	780	2088-2867	Nuclear localized red fluorescent protein from <i>Discosoma sp.</i> (Matz, M et. al Nat Biotechnol 1999 Dec; 17(12): 1227).
Pyruvate kinase terminator	332	3002-3333	Arabidopsis thaliana pyruvate kinase terminator (At5g52920)
Bacterial Kanamycin	817	3478-4294	Bacterial kanamycin selectable marker
Rps16A terminator	489	4477-4965	Amplified from <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> 40S ribosomal protein S16 (At2g09990) for termination of NptII gene
NPTII	795	5029-5823	Neomycin phosphotransferase II plant selectable marker
UBQ10 intron	359	5851-6210	PCR amplified <i>Arabidopsis thaliana</i> intron from UBQ10 gene (At4g05320) for stabilization of NptII gene transcript and increase protein expression level
YAT1 yeast promoter	2000	6224-8223	PCR amplified YAT1 promoter from chromosome I of <i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i> for expression of NptII in maize
LoxP	34	8243-8276 & 10755-10788	Recombination site for Cre mediated recombination (Arenski et. al 1983, Abremski et. al 1984)

Corn mini-chromosomes were constructed by following a two-step procedure: Step 1: Preparation of donor DNA for retrofitting with BAC centromere vectors and Step 2: Cre-Lox Recombination-BAC and Donor DNA to generate the mini-chromosome. A total of 230 corn mini-chromosomes were constructed using this assembly process, and were subsequently tested in several different corn cell lines.

#### **Preparation of donor DNA for retrofitting**

Cre recombinase-mediated exchange was used to construct mini-chromosomes by combining the plant centromere fragments cloned in pBeloBAC11 with a donor plasmid (*i.e.* pCHR667 or pCHR758, tables 51 & 52). The recipient BAC vector carrying the plant centromere fragment contained a *loxP* recombination site; the donor plasmid contained two such sites, flanking the sequences to be inserted into the recipient BAC.



*Cre* recombinase-mediated exchange was used to construct mini-chromosomes by combining the plant centromere fragments cloned in pBeloBAC11 with a donor plasmid (*i.e.* pCHR667 & pCHR758, Tables 7 and 8). The recipient BAC vector carrying the plant centromere fragment contained a *loxP* recombination site; the donor plasmid contained two such sites, flanking the sequences to be inserted into the recipient BAC. Mini-chromosomes were constructed using a two-step method. First, the donor plasmid was linearized to allow free contact between the two *loxP* site; in this step the backbone of the donor plasmid is eliminated. In the second step, the donor molecules were combined with centromere BACs and were treated with *Cre* recombinase, generating circular mini-chromosomes with all the components of the donor and recipient DNA. Mini-chromosomes were delivered into *E. coli* and selected on medium containing kanamycin and chloramphenicol. Only vectors that successfully *cre* recombined and contained both selectable markers survived in the medium. Mini-chromosomes were extracted from bacteria and restriction digested to verify DNA composition and calculate centromere insert size.

To determine the molecular weight of the centromere fragments in the mini-chromosomes, three bacterial colonies from each transformation event were independently grown in selective liquid media and the mini-chromosome DNA harvested using a standard alkaline lysis method. The recovered mini-chromosome was restriction digested and resolved on an agarose gel. Centromere fragment size was determined by comparing to a molecular weight standard. If variation in centromere size was noted, the mini-chromosome with the largest centromere insert was used for further experimentation.

#### **Functional Testing of Mini-chromosomes Using Transient Assays**

Maize mini-chromosomes were tested in several corn cell lines including PC1117, Hill, and BMS, and the procedure was optimized for antibiotic selection, cell pre-treatments, and bombardment conditions. All assays were transient and fluorescent cells were counted at several time points. Preliminary results identified several mini-chromosomes that successfully generated fluorescent cell clusters.

**Example 16**  
**Transformation and Selection of Regenerable Cells and**  
**Corn Plant Regeneration**

The biolistic delivery method using wet gold particles, described in Example 2, was used to deliver the mini-chromosomes into a number of different corn tissues including suspension cells, plate-grown calli, and immature embryos. For the purpose of transient delivery or selection of stable cell culture modified with a corn mini-chromosome, suspension cells were used for delivery using wet or dry gold delivery methods. An example of such a suspension culture is the publicly available line, PC1117.

To obtain trans-chromosomal corn plants modified with corn mini-chromosomes, standard protocols for corn tissue culture and transformation are followed. Such protocols include the Maize Embryo/Callus Bombardment Protocols available at Iowa State University, College of Agriculture web site.

The transformation process involved the preparation of regenerable tissues such as immature embryos from corn cultivars such as HiII, pre-culture of embryos on an auxin-enriched medium, delivery of miniC's into immature embryos or embryogenic calli, selection and isolation of fluorescent cell clusters, expansion of cell clusters and formation of transchromosomal embryos, maturation and regeneration of embryos into whole plants.